For optimum camera performance, please read the Operating Manual before using the camera.
Thank you for purchasing this PENTAX K-\(\times\) Digital Camera. Please read this manual before using the camera in order to get the most out of all the features and functions. Keep this manual safe, as it can be a valuable tool in helping you to understand all the camera’s capabilities.

**Lenses you can use**
In general, lenses that can be used with this camera are DA, DA L, D FA and FA J lenses and lenses that have an Aperture A (Auto) position. To use any other lens or accessory, see p.48 and p.282.

**Regarding copyrights**
Images taken using the K-\(\times\) that are for anything other than personal enjoyment cannot be used without permission according to the rights as specified in the Copyright Act. Please take care, as there are cases where limitations are placed on taking pictures even for personal enjoyment during demonstrations, performances or of items on display. Images taken with the purpose of obtaining copyrights also cannot be used outside the scope of use of the copyright as laid out in the Copyright Act, and care should be taken here also.

**Regarding trademarks**
PENTAX, K-\(\times\) and smc PENTAX are trademarks of HOYA CORPORATION. PENTAX Digital Camera Utility and SDM are trademarks of HOYA CORPORATION. SDHC logo is a trademark.
Microsoft and Windows are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and other countries. Windows Vista is either a registered trademark or trademark of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries. Macintosh and Mac OS are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.
SDHC logo is a trademark.
This product includes DNG technology under license by Adobe Systems Incorporated. The DNG logo is either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries.
All other brands or product names are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective companies.

This product supports PRINT Image Matching III. PRINT Image Matching enabled digital still cameras, printers and software help photographers to produce image more faithful to their intentions. Some functions are not available on printers that are not PRINT Image Matching III compliant.
Copyright 2001 Seiko Epson Corporation. All Rights Reserved.
PRINT Image Matching is a trademark of Seiko Epson Corporation.
The PRINT Image Matching logo is a trademark of Seiko Epson Corporation.
To users of this camera

• Do not use or store this device in the vicinity of equipment that generates strong electromagnetic radiation or magnetic fields. Strong static charges or the magnetic fields produced by equipment such as radio transmitters could interfere with the monitor, damage the stored data, or affect the product's internal circuitry and cause camera misoperation.
• The liquid crystal panel used in the monitor is manufactured using extremely high precision technology. Although the level of functioning pixels is 99.99% or better, you should be aware that 0.01% or fewer of the pixels may not illuminate or may illuminate when they should not. However, this has no effect on the recorded image.
• There is a possibility that the illustrations and the display screen of the monitor in this manual are different from the actual product.

For Using Your Camera Safely

We have paid close attention to the safety of this product. When using this product, we request your special attention regarding items marked with the following symbols.

⚠️ Warning
This symbol indicates that violating this item could cause serious personal injuries.

⚠️ Caution
This symbol indicates that violating this item could cause minor or medium personal injuries, or loss of property.

About the Camera

⚠️ Warning
• Do not disassemble or modify the camera. High voltage areas are present inside the camera, with the risk of electric shock.
• If the camera interior is exposed due to dropping or otherwise damaging the camera, never touch the exposed portion. There is a risk of electric shock.
• Wrapping the strap around your neck is dangerous. Take care that small children do not hang the strap around their necks.
• Do not look directly at the sun through the camera with a telephoto lens attached, as viewing the sun may damage your eyes. Viewing the sun directly with a telephoto lens may lead to a loss of eyesight.
• If any irregularities occur during use, such as smoke or a strange odor, stop use immediately, remove the batteries or the AC adapter, and contact your nearest PENTAX Service Center. Continuing to use the product can cause a fire or electric shock.
• Do not place your finger over the flash when discharging the flash. You may burn yourself.
• Do not cover the flash with clothing when discharging the flash. Discoloration may occur.
• Some portions of the camera heat up during use. There is a risk of low temperature burns when holding such portions for long periods.
• Should the monitor be damaged, be careful of glass fragments. Also, be careful not to allow the liquid crystal to get on your skin or in your eyes or mouth.
• Depending on your individual factors or physical condition, the use of the camera may cause itching, rashes or blisters. In case of any abnormality, stop using the camera and get medical attention immediately.

### About Battery Usage

⚠️ **Warning**

• If any leakage from the batteries should come in contact with your eyes, do not rub them. Flush your eyes with clean water and get medical attention immediately.

⚠️ **Caution**

• This camera uses four AA alkaline, AA lithium or AA Ni-MH batteries. Do not use batteries other than those specified here. Using other types of batteries may cause the camera to function poorly, or the batteries may explode or cause a fire.
• AA alkaline and AA lithium batteries cannot be recharged. Do not disassemble the batteries. Attempting to charge non-rechargeable batteries or disassembling the batteries could result in explosion or leakage.
• The batteries should be inserted correctly, observing (+) and (-) marks on the batteries and the camera. Inserting the batteries incorrectly may cause an explosion or fire.
• When replacing the batteries, do not combine different brands, types or capacities. Also, do not combine old batteries with new ones. Doing so may cause the batteries to explode or cause a fire.
• Do not short the batteries or dispose of the batteries in fire. Do not disassemble the batteries. The batteries could explode or catch fire.
• Do not charge any batteries other than rechargeable Ni-MH batteries. The batteries could explode or catch fire. Batteries for use with this camera other than Ni-MH batteries cannot be charged.
• If any leakage from the batteries should come in contact with skin or clothes, it may cause irritation to the skin. Wash the affected areas thoroughly with water.
• Remove the batteries from the camera immediately if they become hot or begin to smoke. Be careful not to burn yourself during removal.

### About the SD Memory Card

⚠️ **Warning**

• To avoid the risk of SD Memory Cards from being swallowed by mistake, keep them out of the reach of small children. Seek medical attention immediately if an SD Memory Card is accidentally swallowed.
About the AC Adapter

⚠️ Warning

• Always use the AC adapter exclusively developed for this product, with the specified power and voltage. Using an AC adapter not exclusive to this product, or using the exclusive AC adapter with an unspecified power or voltage can cause a fire, electric shock, or camera breakdown.

⚠️ Caution

• Do not place or drop heavy objects on or forcefully bend the AC plug cord. Doing so may damage the cord. Should the AC plug cord be damaged, consult a PENTAX Service Center.
• Do not touch or short-circuit the terminal area of the AC plug cord while the cord is plugged in.
• Do not plug or unplug the power cord with wet hands. This can cause an electric shock.
• Do not drop the product, or subject it to violent impact. This can cause equipment breakdown.
• To reduce the risk of hazards, use only a CSA/UL certified power supply cord set, cord is Type SPT-2 or heavier, minimum NO.18 AWG copper, one end with a molded-on male attachment plug cap (with a specified NEMA configuration), and the other is provided with a molded-on female connector body (with a specified IEC nonindustrial type configuration) or the equivalent.

Care to be Taken During Handling

Before Using Your Camera

• When traveling, take the Worldwide Service Network listing that is included in the package. This will be useful if you experience problems abroad.
• When the camera has not been used for a long time, confirm that it is still working properly, particularly prior to taking important pictures (such as at a wedding or during traveling). Contents of the recording cannot be guaranteed if recording, playback or transferring your data to a computer, etc. is not possible due to a malfunction of your camera or recording media (SD Memory Card), etc.

Precautions on Carrying and Using Your Camera

• Do not subject the camera to high temperatures or high humidity. Do not leave the camera in a vehicle, as the temperature can get very high.
• Do not subject the camera to strong vibrations, shocks, or pressure. Use a cushion to protect the camera from vibrations of motorcycles, automobiles, or ships.
• The temperature range for camera use is 0°C to 40°C (32°F to 104°F).
• The monitor may appear black at high temperatures, but will return to normal at normal temperatures.
• The monitor may respond more slowly at low temperatures. This is due to liquid crystal properties, and is not a malfunction.
• Sudden temperature changes will cause condensation on the inside and outside of the camera. Place the camera in your bag or a plastic bag, and remove the camera after temperature of the camera and surroundings are equalized.
• Avoid contact with garbage, mud, sand, dust, water, toxic gases, or salts. These could cause the camera to breakdown. Wipe dry any rain or water drops on the camera.
• Please do not press forcefully on the monitor. This could cause it to break or malfunction.
• Be careful not to overtighten the screw in the tripod socket when using a tripod.

Cleaning Your Camera

• Do not clean the product with organic solvents such as thinner, alcohol, or benzene. This may cause color fading or discoloration.
• Use a lens brush to remove dust accumulated on the lens or viewfinder. Never use a spray blower for cleaning as it may damage the lens.
• Please contact a PENTAX Service Center for professional cleaning of the CMOS sensor. (This will involve a fee.)

Storing Your Camera

• Do not store the camera with preservatives or chemicals. Storage in high temperatures and high humidity can cause mold to grow on the camera. Remove the camera from its case and store it in a dry and well-ventilated place.

Other Precautions

• Periodic inspections are recommended every one to two years to maintain high performance.
• Refer to “Precautions When Using the SD Memory Card” (p.45) regarding the SD Memory Card.
• Please note that deleting the data recorded on an SD Memory Card or formatting an SD Memory Card using a camera or computer will not necessarily delete the data so that they cannot be recovered using off-the-shelf data recovery software. Such data should be handled and managed at your own risk.

Regarding Product Registration

In order to better serve you, we request that you complete the product registration, which can be found on the CD-ROM supplied with the camera or on the PENTAX website. Refer to p.273 for details. Thank you for your cooperation.
Contents

For Using Your Camera Safely ............................................................ 1
Care to be Taken During Handling ...................................................... 3
Contents ............................................................................................... 5
Composition of the Operating Manual ................................................. 11

Before Using Your Camera 13

K-x Camera Characteristics .............................................................. 14
Checking the Contents of the Package .............................................. 16
Names and Functions of Working Parts ........................................... 17
   Capture Mode .................................................................................. 18
   Playback Mode ................................................................................ 20
Display Indicators ........................................................................... 22
   Monitor ............................................................................................ 22
   Viewfinder ....................................................................................... 30
How to Change Function Settings .................................................... 32
   Using the Direct Keys ..................................................................... 32
   Using the Control Panel .................................................................. 33
   Using the Menus .............................................................................. 35

Getting Started 37

Attaching the Strap ........................................................................... 38
Inserting the Batteries ........................................................................ 39
   Battery Level Indicator .................................................................... 40
   Approximate Image Storage Capacity and Playback Time (New
   Batteries) ......................................................................................... 41
   Using the AC Adapter (Optional) ....................................................... 42
Inserting/Removing the SD Memory Card ........................................ 44
   Recorded Pixels and Quality Level .................................................. 46
Attaching the Lens ............................................................................. 48
Adjusting the Viewfinder Diopter .................................................... 50
Turning the Camera On and Off ....................................................... 51
Initial Settings ................................................................................... 52
   Setting the Display Language .......................................................... 52
   Setting the Date and Time ............................................................... 56
Basic Operations

Basic Shooting Operation ...............................................................60
    Holding the Camera ......................................................................60
    Letting the Camera Choose the Optimal Settings .........................61

Using a Zoom Lens ....................................................................66

Using the Built-in Flash ...............................................................67
    Setting the Flash Mode ..............................................................67
    Compensating Flash Output ........................................................72
    Allowing Shooting while Charging the Flash .................................73

Playing Back Pictures ..................................................................74
    Playing Back Images ...................................................................74
    Deleting a Single Image ................................................................75

Shooting Functions .....................................................................77

How to Operate the Shooting Functions .......................................78
    Direct Keys Setting Items ..........................................................78
    Rec. Mode Menu Setting Items ...................................................79
    Custom Setting Menu Setting Items ............................................81

Selecting the Appropriate Capture Mode ....................................83
    Picture Mode ............................................................................84
    SCN Mode ................................................................................85
    Exposure Mode ........................................................................87

Setting the Exposure ....................................................................88
    Effect of Aperture and Shutter Speed ..........................................88
    Setting the Sensitivity ................................................................90
    Changing the Exposure Mode ......................................................93
    Selecting the Metering Method ...................................................104
    Adjusting the Exposure ................................................................107

Focusing ....................................................................................112
    Using the Autofocus ...................................................................112
    Setting the AF Mode ...................................................................115
    Selecting the Focusing Area (AF Point) .........................................117
    Locking the Focus (Focus Lock) ..................................................119
    Adjusting the Focus Manually (Manual Focus) ............................121

Checking the Composition, Exposure and Focus Before Shooting (Preview) ............................................124
    Assigning the Preview Function to the Green Button ...................124
    Displaying the Optical Preview ...................................................126
    Displaying the Digital Preview ...................................................127

Using Shake Reduction Function to Prevent Camera Shake .................128
    Taking Pictures Using the Shake Reduction Function ...................128
    Shooting with the Self-timer .......................................................131
    Shooting with the Remote Control (Optional) .............................134
Taking Pictures Continuously ........................................................................... 136
Continuous Shooting .................................................................................. 136
Multi-exposure ......................................................................................... 138

Taking Pictures Using Digital Filters .......................................................... 140

Shooting with the Live View ........................................................................ 143
Taking Still Pictures .................................................................................. 144
Recording Movies ..................................................................................... 148

Using the Flash .......................................................................................... 155
Flash Characteristics in Each Exposure Mode ........................................... 156
Using the Slow-speed Sync ...................................................................... 156
Using the Trailing Curtain Sync ................................................................. 158
Distance and Aperture when Using the Built-in Flash ................................ 160
Lens Compatibility with the Built-in Flash .................................................. 161
Using an External Flash (Optional) ............................................................ 162
Using P-TTL Auto Mode ........................................................................... 163
Using High-Speed Flash Sync Mode ........................................................... 164
Using Flash in Wireless Mode .................................................................... 165
Red-Eye Reduction ..................................................................................... 168
Trailing Curtain Sync ................................................................................. 169
Connecting an External Flash with an Extension Cord ............................... 169
Multiple Flash Shooting Using Extension Cords ........................................ 170
Contrast-Control-Sync Flash ........................................................................ 171

Shooting Settings ....................................................................................... 173
Setting the File Format ............................................................................... 174
Setting the JPEG Recorded Pixels ............................................................... 174
Setting the JPEG Quality Level .................................................................. 175
Setting the File Format .............................................................................. 177
Setting the Green Button Function .............................................................. 179
Setting the White Balance .......................................................................... 182
Adjusting the White Balance Manually ......................................................... 184
Fine-Tuning the White Balance .................................................................. 186
Setting the Color Space ............................................................................... 187
Correcting Images ....................................................................................... 189
Adjusting the Brightness .............................................................................. 189
Lens Correction .......................................................................................... 192
Setting the Image Finishing Tone ................................................................. 194
Setting Custom Image ................................................................................ 194
Setting Cross Processing ............................................................................ 196
Playback Functions

Playback Functions Operation .................................................. 200
  Playback Mode Palette Setting Items .............................................................. 200
  Playback Menu Setting Items ............................................................................. 201

Enlarging Images .................................................................................. 202

Displaying Multiple Images ........................................................................... 204
  Multi-image Display Screen ............................................................................. 204
  Displaying Images by Folder ........................................................................ 205
  Displaying Images by Shooting Date (Calendar Display) ...................... 206
  Joining Multiple Images (Index) ..................................................................... 207

Slideshow .................................................................................................... 210
  Setting the Slideshow Display .................................................................. 210
  Starting the Slideshow ............................................................................... 211

Rotating Images ....................................................................................... 213

Comparing Images ...................................................................................... 214

Deleting Multiple Images ........................................................................... 215
  Deleting Selected Images ........................................................................... 215
  Deleting a Folder ........................................................................................ 216
  Deleting All Images .................................................................................... 218

Protecting Images from Deletion (Protect) .............................................. 219
  Protecting a Single Image ........................................................................... 219
  Protecting All Images .................................................................................. 220

Connecting the Camera to an AV Device .................................................. 221

Processing Images .................................................................................... 223

Changing the Image Size ............................................................................ 224
  Changing the Number of Recorded Pixels and Quality Level (Resize) .......... 224
  Cutting Out Part of the Image (Cropping) .................................................. 225

Processing Images with Digital Filters ...................................................... 227
  Applying the Digital Filter ........................................................................... 229
  Recreating Filter Effects ............................................................................ 230
  Searching for the Original Image ................................................................. 232

Developing RAW Images ........................................................................... 233
  Developing One RAW Image ....................................................................... 233
  Developing Multiple RAW Images ................................................................. 234
  Specifying the Parameters ............................................................................ 236

Readjusting Images Shot in JPEG Format .................................................. 238
## Changing Additional Settings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>How to Operate the Set-up Menu</strong></td>
<td>240</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Set-up Menu Setting Items</td>
<td>240</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Formatting an SD Memory Card</strong></td>
<td>242</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Setting the Beep, Date and Time, and Display Language</strong></td>
<td>243</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting the Beep</td>
<td>243</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Changing the Date and Time Display</td>
<td>244</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting the World Time</td>
<td>244</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting the Display Language</td>
<td>247</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Adjusting the Monitor and the Menu Display</strong></td>
<td>248</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting the Text Size</td>
<td>248</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting the Guide Display Time</td>
<td>248</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting the Status Screen Display</td>
<td>248</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting the Display for Instant Review</td>
<td>249</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjusting the Brightness of the Monitor</td>
<td>250</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjusting the Color of the Monitor</td>
<td>251</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Setting the Folder Name/File Number Naming Convention</strong></td>
<td>252</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selecting the Folder Name</td>
<td>252</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selecting the File Number Setting</td>
<td>252</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Selecting the Power Settings</strong></td>
<td>253</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting Auto Power Off</td>
<td>253</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting the Battery Type</td>
<td>253</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting the Operation of the Power Lamp</td>
<td>254</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Setting the DPOF Settings</strong></td>
<td>255</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Setting the Photographer Information Saved to Exif</strong></td>
<td>257</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Correcting Defective Pixels in the CMOS Sensor</strong> (Pixel Mapping)</td>
<td>259</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Selecting Settings to Save in the Camera (Memory)</strong></td>
<td>260</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Connecting to a Computer</strong></td>
<td>263</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Using Captured Images on a Computer</strong></td>
<td>264</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Saving Images on Your Computer</strong></td>
<td>265</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting USB Connection Mode</td>
<td>265</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saving Images by Connecting Your Camera and Your Computer</td>
<td>266</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Using the Provided Software</strong></td>
<td>268</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Installing the Software</td>
<td>268</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The PENTAX Digital Camera Utility 4 Screen</td>
<td>270</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section</td>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Settings</td>
<td>276</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resetting the Menu</td>
<td>280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Functions Available with Various Lens Combinations</td>
<td>282</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes on [22. Using Aperture Ring]</td>
<td>284</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cleaning the CMOS Sensor</td>
<td>285</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Removing Dust by Shaking the CMOS Sensor (Dust Removal)</td>
<td>285</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Detecting Dust on the CMOS Sensor (Dust Alert)</td>
<td>286</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Removing Dust with a Blower</td>
<td>287</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional Accessories</td>
<td>289</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Error Messages</td>
<td>293</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Troubleshooting</td>
<td>295</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Main Specifications</td>
<td>298</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glossary</td>
<td>302</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Index</td>
<td>307</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WARRANTY POLICY</td>
<td>313</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Composition of the Operating Manual

This Operating Manual contains the following chapters.

1. **Before Using Your Camera**
   Explains camera characteristics, accessories and the names and functions of various parts.

2. **Getting Started**
   Explains your first steps from purchasing the camera to taking pictures. Be sure to read it and follow the instructions.

3. **Basic Operations**
   Explains the procedures for taking and playing back pictures.

4. **Shooting Functions**
   Explains the shooting-related functions.

5. **Using the Flash**
   Explains how to use the built-in flash and external flashes.

6. **Shooting Settings**
   Explains the procedures for configuring image processing and setting the file format.

7. **Playback Functions**
   Explains the procedures for playing back, deleting, and protecting images.

8. **Processing Images**
   Explains the procedures for changing the image size, using image filters and processing pictures taken in RAW format.

9. **Changing Additional Settings**
   Explains the procedures for changing the camera settings, such as the monitor settings and the image folder naming convention.

10. **Connecting to a Computer**
    Explains how to connect the camera to a computer, and includes installation instructions and a general overview of the provided software.

11. **Appendix**
    Explains troubleshooting, introduces optional accessories and provides various resources.
The symbols used in this Operating Manual are explained below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Indicates reference page number explaining a related operation.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>🔗</td>
<td>Indicates useful information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>⚠️</td>
<td>Indicates precautions to take when operating the camera.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1 Before Using Your Camera

Check the package contents and the names and functions of working parts before use.

K-x Camera Characteristics .................................. 14
Checking the Contents of the Package .............. 16
Names and Functions of Working Parts .......... 17
Display Indicators ................................................. 22
How to Change Function Settings .................. 32
Camera Characteristics

- Features a 23.6×15.8 mm CMOS sensor with approximately 12.4 million effective pixels for high precision and a wide dynamic range.
- Features Shake Reduction (SR), an image sensor shifting shake reduction system. This enables you to capture sharp pictures with minimal camera shake regardless of the lens type.
- Features a viewfinder similar to that of a conventional 35 mm camera, with a magnification of approximately 0.85 and field of view of approximately 96%, for easier image composition and manual focusing.
- Features a large 2.7-inch monitor with approximately 230,000 dots, a wide viewing angle and brightness and color adjusting functions for high-precision viewing performance.
- Uses AA lithium batteries, AA Ni-MH rechargeable batteries or AA alkaline batteries.
- Features a Live View function for shooting while viewing the subject in real-time on the monitor.
- Movies can be recorded by taking advantage of the camera lens properties. The camera can also output composite video so that you can view recorded images and movies on a monitor such as a TV screen.
- A user-friendly design has been implemented in various parts of the camera. The large text size, high-contrast monitor and easy-to-use menus make the camera easier to operate.
- The CMOS sensor features a special SP coating to prevent dust sticking to the sensor. The Dust Removal function also shakes the CMOS sensor for removing collected dust.
- Features Digital Filters to internally process the image in the camera. You can use digital filters such as Star Burst or Soft while taking pictures or to process images after taking them.
- Features Custom Image which allows you to adjust settings while previewing the edited image, enabling a wider range of expression.
- Records in the versatile JPEG format or the high quality and fully editable RAW format. You can also select JPEG+RAW and record in both formats simultaneously. Pictures taken in RAW format can be easily processed internally by the camera.
- Features Sensitivity Priority mode $\text{Sv}$ that automatically adjusts aperture and shutter speed according to the set sensitivity.
Shake Reduction (SR)

Shake Reduction (SR) on the K-x features a PENTAX original system which uses magnetic force to move the image sensor at high speeds, compensating camera shake. The camera may generate some operating noise when it is shaken, such as when changing the composition of a picture. This is normal and not a malfunction.

The captured area (view angle) will differ between the K-x and 35 mm SLR cameras even if the same lens is used because the format size for 35 mm film and CMOS sensor are different.

Sizes for 35 mm film and CMOS sensor

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Format</th>
<th>Dimensions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>35 mm film</td>
<td>36x24 mm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>K-x CMOS sensor</td>
<td>23.6x15.8 mm</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Angles of view being equal, the focal length of a lens used with a 35 mm camera must be approximately 1.5 times longer than that of K-x. To obtain an angle of view framing the same area, divide the focal length of the 35 mm lens by 1.5.

Example) To capture the same image as a 150 mm lens attached to a 35 mm camera

150÷1.5=100

Use a 100 mm lens with the K-x.

Inversely, multiply the focal length of the lens used with the K-x by 1.5 to determine the focal length for 35 mm cameras.

Example) If 300 mm lens is used with the K-x

300×1.5=450

Focal length is equivalent to a 450 mm lens on a 35 mm camera.
The following accessories are packaged with your camera. Check that all accessories are included.

- Hot shoe cover Fk (Installed on camera)
- Eyecup Fq (Installed on camera)
- Body mount cover (Installed on camera)
- USB cable I-USB7
- Strap O-ST53
- Software (CD-ROM) S-SW99
- Four AA lithium batteries
- Operating Manual (this manual)

Refer to p.289 for information on optional accessories.
Names and Functions of Working Parts

* In the second illustration, the camera is shown with the Eyecup FQ removed.
Capture Mode

Functions of buttons, dials and levers used during shooting are noted.

The factory default settings are explained here. Depending on the button, these settings can be changed.
Before Using Your Camera

1. (Green) button
   You can assign a function to this button. (p.179)

2. Shutter release button
   Press to capture images. (p.64)

3. Main switch
   Move to turn the camera on and off. (p.51)

4. Lens unlock button
   Press to detach the lens. (p.49)

5. Av button
   Sets the EV compensation and aperture values. (p.94, p.100, p.107)

6. Mode dial
   Changes Capture mode. (p.83)

7. Focus mode lever
   Switches between autofocus mode (p.112) and manual focus mode (p.121).

8. UP/ button
   Press to pop up the built-in flash. (p.67)

9. e-dial
   Sets the shutter speed, aperture, sensitivity and EV compensation values.

10. AF/AE-L button
    You can select the function of this button either to focus on the target or to lock the exposure value. (p.102, p.108, p.114)

11. button
    Switches to Playback mode. (p.74)

12. LV button
    Displays the Live View. (p.143)

13. INFO button
    Displays the status screen (p.23)
    Displays the control panel when the status screen is shown. (p.24)

14. OK button
    Displays the screen for setting the AF point. (p.117)
    When the control panel or a menu screen is displayed, press this button to confirm the selected item.

15. Four-way controller (▲ ▼ ◀ ▶)
    Opens the Drive Mode/Flash Mode/White Balance/Sensitivity setup menu (p.78).
    When the control panel or a menu screen is displayed, use this to move the cursor or change items.

16. MENU button
    Displays the [Rec. Mode 1] menu (p.79). Next, press the four-way controller (▶) to display other menus.
Before Using Your Camera

Functions of buttons, dials and levers used during playback are noted.
Before Using Your Camera

1 Shutter release button
Press halfway to switch to Capture mode.

2 Main switch
Move to turn the camera on and off. (p.51)

3 (Green) button
Press to change the settings, such as resetting the values. (p.179)

4 UP/ button
Press to delete images. (p.75)

5 e-dial
Use this to enlarge an image (p.202) or display multiple images at the same time (p.204).

6 button
Switches to Capture mode.

7 INFO button
Displays shooting information on the monitor. (p.25)

8 OK button
Saves the setting you selected in the menu or playback screen.

9 Four-way controller (▲▼◄►)
Use this to move the cursor or change items in the menu or playback screen.

10 MENU button
Displays the [ Playback 1] menu (p.201). Next, press the four-way controller (►) to display other menus.

References to Button Names

In this Operating Manual, the buttons of the four-way controller are referred to in the following way.
Display Indicators

Monitor

The following indicators appear on the monitor depending on the status of the camera.

![Monitor](image)

The brightness and the color of the monitor can be adjusted. (p.250, p.251)

At Start-up or when Operating the Mode Dial

Guides appear on the monitor for 3 seconds (default setting) when the camera is switched on or the mode dial is turned.

![Monitor](image)

To not show indicators, set [Guide Display] to [Off] in the [Set-up 1] menu. (p.248)

- **1** Capture mode (p.83)
- **2** World time (p.244) (only when set to Destination)
- **3** Current date and time (p.56)
Before Using Your Camera

While shooting, the status screen is displayed showing the current shooting function settings. You can change the screen displayed by pressing the INFO button.

- **Status screen**
  (All items are displayed here for explanatory purposes. The actual display may differ.)

1. Capture Mode (p.83)
2. AE Lock (p.108)
3. Multi-exposure (p.138)/Digital Filter (p.140)/HDR Capture (p.191)/Cross Processing (p.196)
4. Custom Image (p.194)
5. Focus Mode (p.112)
6. AE Metering (p.104)
7. Battery level (p.40)
8. E-dial guide
9. Shutter speed
10. Aperture value
11. ISO AUTO
12. Sensitivity (p.90)
13. EV Compensation (p.107)/Exposure Bracketing (p.109)
14. EV bar
15. Flash Exposure Compensation (p.72)
16. Adjust White Balance (p.186)
17. Drive Mode (p.78)
18. White Balance (p.182)
19. AF point (p.117)
20. ISO (p.90)
21. Flash Mode (p.67)
22. File Format (p.177)
23. JPEG Recorded Pixels (p.174)
24. JPEG Quality (p.175)
25. Shake Reduction (p.128)
26. Remaining image storage capacity
Control panel
Press the INFO button in the status screen to display the control panel and change settings.

1 Function name
2 Setting
3 Custom Image (p.194)
4 Cross Processing (p.196)
5 Digital Filter (p.140)
6 HDR Capture (p.191)
7 Shake Reduction (p.128)
8 AE Metering (p.104)
9 AF Mode (p.115)
10 Select AF point (p.117)
11 Highlight Correction (p.189)
12 Shadow Correction (p.190)
13 File Format (p.177)
14 JPEG Recorded Pixels (p.174)
15 JPEG Quality (p.175)
16 Distortion Correction (p.192)
17 Lateral Chromatic Aberration Correction (p.192)
18 Date and Time
19 Remaining image storage capacity

- Settings that cannot be changed due to the current camera setup cannot be selected.
- The status screen will disappear if no operations are made within 30 seconds. Press the INFO button to display it again.
- If no operations are made within 30 seconds in the control panel, the status screen will reappear.
- If [Shooting Info Display] is set to (On) in [Memory] (p.260) of the [Rec. Mode 4] menu and the blank screen is selected, the next time the camera is turned on the blank screen is displayed first.
Playback Mode

The camera switches the type of information display when you press the INFO button during playback.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard</th>
<th>Captured image, file format and indicators are displayed.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Histogram display</td>
<td>Captured image and histogram (Brightness/RGB) are displayed. Not available during movie playback.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Detailed information display</td>
<td>Detailed information on how and when the image was taken is displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No info. display</td>
<td>Only captured image is displayed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The information that is shown first during playback is the same as that of the last playback in the previous session. If [Playback Info Display] is set to □ (Off) in [Memory] (p.260) of the [Rec. Mode 4] menu, the [Standard] screen is always displayed first when the camera is turned on.
Detailed information display

Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to switch between pages. The copyright information is displayed on page 2.

Page 1

Still Picture

![Still Picture Display](image)

Movie

![Movie Display](image)

Page 2

Still Picture/Movie

![Still Picture/Movie Display](image)
<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Rotation information (p.213)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Captured image</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Protect (p.219)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Capture Mode (p.83)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Focus Mode (p.112)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>AF point (p.117)/Autofocus Mode (p.144)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Flash Mode (p.67)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>AE Metering (p.104)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Lens focal length</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Shutter speed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Shake Reduction (p.128)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Drive Mode (p.78)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>HDR Capture (p.191)/Multi-exposure (p.138)/Cross Processing (p.196)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>Highlight Correction (p.189)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>Shadow Correction (p.190)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>Aperture value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>EV Compensation (p.107)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>Flash Exposure Compensation (p.72)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>Digital Filter (p.140)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>Sensitivity (p.90)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>White Balance (p.182)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>Adjust White Balance (p.186)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>File Format (p.177)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>Recorded Pixels (p.148, p.174)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>Quality Level (p.148, p.175)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>Color Space (p.187)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>Image Tone (p.194)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>Custom Image parameters (p.194)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>Shooting date/time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>Folder number-File number (p.252)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>Recording time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>Sound (p.148)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33</td>
<td>Audio mode (p.148)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34</td>
<td>Information tampering warning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>Photographer (p.257)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36</td>
<td>Copyright Holder (p.257)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* For images shot with Live View, the autofocus mode is displayed for indicator 6.
* Indicators 7 and 18 appear only for images in which the flash was discharged.
* Indicators 13, 14, 15, 19, and 22 appear only for images taken with the corresponding functions enabled.
* Indicators 24 and 25 do not appear for RAW images.
● Histogram Display

The following histograms can be displayed when playing back still pictures. The “Brightness histogram” shows the distribution of brightness and the “RGB histogram” shows the distribution of color intensity. Press the four-way controller (▲▼) to switch between “Brightness histogram” and “RGB histogram”.

1  Histogram (Brightness)
2  Switch RGB histogram/ Brightness histogram
3  File Format
4  Shutter speed
5  Aperture value
6  Protect

* Indicator 6 appears only for images with Protect setting.

memo
If [Bright/Dark Area] is set to ➡️ (On) in [Playback Display Method] of the [ Playback 1] menu, areas affected by bright or dark portions blink (except when in RGB histogram display and Detailed information display). (p.203)
Using the Histogram

A histogram shows the brightness distribution of an image. The horizontal axis represents brightness (dark at the left and bright at the right) and the vertical axis represents the number of pixels.

The shape and the distribution of the histogram before and after shooting tells you whether the exposure level and contrast are correct or not, and lets you decide if you need to adjust the exposure and take a picture again.

- Adjusting the Exposure (p.107)
- Adjusting the Brightness (p.189)

Understanding Brightness

When the brightness is correct and there are no overly bright or dark areas, the graph peaks in the middle. If the image is too dark, the peak is on the left side, and if it is too bright, the peak is on the right side.

When the image is too dark, the part to the left is cut off (dark portions with no detail) and when the image is too bright, the part to the right is cut off (bright portions with no detail). Bright portions blink red and dark portions blink yellow on the monitor when [Bright/Dark Area] is (On).

- Playing Back Images (p.74)
- Setting the Display for Instant Review (p.249)
Understanding Color Balance
Distribution of color intensity is displayed for each color in the RGB histogram. The right side of the graphs look similar for images that have White Balance adjusted well. If only one color is lopsided to the left, that color is too intense.

Setting the White Balance (p.182)

Guide Indicators
The following indicators appear on the monitor to indicate the keys, buttons and e-dial that can be operated at that time.

Example)

| ▲ | Four-way controller (▲) | MENU button |
| ▼ | Four-way controller (▼) | OK button |
| ▼ | Four-way controller (▼) | Green button |
| ▼ | Four-way controller (▼) | Av button |
| e-dial | INFO button |
| SHUTTER | Shutter release button | UP/ button |

Viewfinder
The following information appears in the viewfinder.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>AF frame (p.50)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Spot metering frame (p.104)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Flash status (p.67)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Picture mode icon (p.84)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Shake Reduction (p.128)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Shutter speed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Aperture value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Focus indicator (p.62)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Number of recordable images/EV compensation value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Focus mode (p.112)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>AE lock (p.108)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Lit: when flash is available.
- Blinks: when flash is recommended but not set.
- The icon for Picture mode in use appears.
- Lit: when the subject is focused.
- Blinks: when the subject is not in focus.
- Underlined when shutter speed can be adjusted with the e-dial.
- Underlined when aperture value can be adjusted with the e-dial.
- Underlined when EV compensation value can be adjusted with the e-dial while the \text{E\textsc{v}} \text{Av} button is pressed.
- Underlined when the sensitivity can be adjusted with the e-dial.
- MF is displayed in the viewfinder while the \text{AF/AE-L} button is pressed. (p.114)
How to Change Function Settings

Function settings can be changed using the direct keys, the control panel or the menu. This section explains the basic ways to change function settings.

### Using the Direct Keys

In Capture mode, you can set Drive Mode, Flash Mode, White Balance and Sensitivity by pressing the four-way controller (▲▼◄►), and set AF point by pressing the OK button. (p.78)

Below, how to set the flash mode will be explained as an example.

1. **Press the four-way controller (▼) in Capture mode.**
   
   The [Flash Mode] screen appears.

2. **Use the four-way controller (◄►) to select a flash mode.**

3. **Press the OK button.**
   
   The camera is ready to take a picture.
Using the Control Panel

While shooting, the current settings can be checked on the status screen. You can also switch the display to the control panel and change settings. Below, how to set the JPEG Quality will be explained as an example.

1. **Check the status screen and then press the INFO button.**
   The control panel appears.

   Press the INFO button when the status screen is not displayed.

2. **Use the four-way controller (▲▼◄►) to select an item you want to change the setting for.**
   You cannot select items that cannot be changed.
3 Press the OK button.
The setup screen of the selected item appears.

4 Use the four-way controller (△□) or e-dial to select a setting value.

5 Press the OK button.
The camera returns to the control panel and is ready to take a picture.

- You can also change the setting by turning the e-dial after selecting the item you want to change in Step 2 on p.33. For detailed settings such as parameters, press the OK button and then make changes.
- The status screen and control panel are not displayed when Live View (p.143) is displayed. Make the settings in the [Rec. Mode] menu.
Using the Menus

This section explains operation methods for the [Rec. Mode], [Playback], [Set-up] and [Custom Setting] menus. Below, how to set [HDR Capture] in the [Rec. Mode 2] menu will be explained as an example.

1 Press the MENU button in Capture mode.

The [Rec. Mode 1] menu appears on the monitor.

If the MENU button is pressed in Playback mode, the [Playback 1] menu appears. When the mode dial is set to SCN (Scene), the [SCN Scene] menu appears instead.

2 Press the four-way controller (▲). 

Each time the four-way controller (▲) is pressed, the menu will change in the following sequence: [Rec. Mode 2], [Rec. Mode 3], [Rec. Mode 4], [Playback 1] ··· [Rec. Mode 1].

You can also use the e-dial to switch the menus.

3 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to choose an item.
4 Press the four-way controller (▶).

Available settings are displayed. The frame moves to the pop-up menu if there is one.

5 Use the four-way controller (▲ ▼) to select a setting.

6 Press the OK button.

The camera returns to the menu screen. Next, set other items. Press the MENU button to exit the menu and the screen that was displayed before selecting the menu appears again.

Caution: Even after you press the MENU button and close the menu screen, your settings will not be saved if the camera is turned off improperly (such as by removing the batteries while the camera is on).

Refer to the following pages for details on each menu item.
• [Rec. Mode] menu p.79
• [Playback] menu p.201
• [Set-up] menu p.240
• [Custom Setting] menu p.81
2 Getting Started

This chapter explains your first steps from purchasing the camera to taking pictures. Be sure to read it and follow the instructions.

Attaching the Strap .......................................................... 38
Inserting the Batteries ....................................................... 39
Inserting/Removing the SD Memory Card .......... 44
Attaching the Lens ............................................................ 48
Adjusting the Viewfinder Diopter .............................. 50
Turning the Camera On and Off ................................. 51
Initial Settings .................................................................. 52
1 Pass the end of the strap through the strap lug, then secure it on the inside of the clasp.

2 Attach the other end of the strap in the same manner as described above.
Inserting the Batteries

Insert batteries into the camera. Use four AA lithium batteries, AA Ni-MH rechargeable batteries, or AA alkaline batteries.

This camera is packaged with AA lithium batteries for checking the camera functionality but other kinds of batteries are also compatible. Use the compatible batteries according to the intended purpose.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Available Batteries</th>
<th>Characteristics</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AA lithium batteries</td>
<td>Provided with the camera. Recommended when using the camera in cold climates.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AA Ni-MH rechargeable batteries</td>
<td>These are rechargeable and are economical. A commercially available battery charger that is compatible with the batteries is required.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AA alkaline batteries</td>
<td>These are easily obtainable when the batteries you are using run out but they may not support all the camera functions under certain conditions. We do not recommend using them except in emergencies or when checking the camera functionality.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Do not use the Ni-Mn batteries as the batteries’ voltage characteristics may cause a malfunction.
- AA lithium batteries and AA alkaline batteries that can be used in this camera are not rechargeable.
- Do not open the battery cover or remove the batteries while the power is on.
- Remove the batteries when you do not plan to use the camera for a long time. If you leave them in the camera for a long time, they may leak.
- If the date and time settings have been reset when you insert new batteries after a long time has passed since the batteries were removed, follow the procedure for “Setting the Date and Time” (p.56).
- Insert the batteries correctly. Batteries inserted incorrectly may cause a camera breakdown. Wipe the electrodes of the batteries before inserting.
- Replace all the batteries at the same time and do not mix battery types, brands or old batteries with new ones. Otherwise, malfunctions, such as the battery level not being displayed properly, may occur.
1 Push and hold the battery cover unlock lever as shown in the illustration (①), slide the battery cover toward the lens (②) and then flip open.

2 Insert the batteries according to the +/- indicators in the battery chamber.

3 Press down on the batteries with the battery cover (③) and slide it as shown in the illustration (④) to close.

Caution: Be sure to fully close the battery cover. The camera will not turn on if the battery cover is open.

Memo: • Use the AC adapter kit K-AC84 (optional) when using the camera for a prolonged period. (p.42)
  • Check the orientation of the batteries if the camera does not operate properly after replacing the batteries.

Battery Level Indicator

You can confirm remaining battery level by checking the displayed on the status screen.
## Status Screen

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Status Screen</th>
<th>Battery Level</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="green" alt="Battery Level" /> (Green)</td>
<td>Batteries are full.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="orange" alt="Battery Level" /> (Orange)</td>
<td>Batteries are running low.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="red" alt="Battery Level" /> (Red)</td>
<td>Batteries are almost empty.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“Battery depleted”</td>
<td>The camera turns off after displaying the message.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

memo: The ![Battery Level](orange) (Orange) or ![Battery Level](red) (Red) may appear even when the battery level is sufficient if the camera is used at low temperatures or when performing continuous shooting consecutively. In this situation, turn the camera off and on again. If ![Battery Level](green) (Green) appears, you can use the camera.

## Approximate Image Storage Capacity and Playback Time (New Batteries)

(Based on ambient operating temperature of 23 °C)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Batteries</th>
<th>Normal Recording</th>
<th>Flash Photography (50% Use)</th>
<th>Playback Time</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AA lithium batteries</td>
<td>1900</td>
<td>1100</td>
<td>680 minutes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AA Ni-MH rechargeable batteries</td>
<td>640</td>
<td>420</td>
<td>390 minutes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(1900mAh)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AA alkaline batteries</td>
<td>210</td>
<td>130</td>
<td>350 minutes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The image storage capacity (normal recording and flash use 50%) is based on measuring conditions in accordance with CIPA standards, while other data is based on our measuring conditions. Some deviation from the above figures may occur in actual use depending on shooting mode and shooting conditions.

memo: • Battery performance temporarily decreases as the temperature decreases. When using the camera in cold climates, have extra batteries at hand and keep them warm in your pocket. Battery performance will return to normal when returned to room temperature.

• Have extra batteries ready when traveling overseas, taking pictures in cold climates, or when you will be taking a lot of pictures.
Using the AC Adapter (Optional)

We recommend using the AC adapter kit K-AC84 (optional) when using the monitor for a long time or when connecting the camera to a computer or AV device.

1  Make sure the camera is turned off.
   If batteries are inserted into the camera, open the battery cover and remove the batteries. Refer to Step 1 on p.40.

2  Open the battery cover and pull out the electric cable cover (①) on the right side of the battery chamber.

3  Insert the DC coupler into the battery chamber.

4  Pull out the DC coupler’s electric cable as shown in the illustration.
5 Close the battery cover.
Refer to Step 3 on p.40.

6 Connect the DC terminal on the AC adapter to the DC coupler.

7 Connect the AC plug cord to the AC adapter.

8 Plug the AC cord into the power outlet.

• Make sure the camera is turned off before connecting or disconnecting the AC adapter.
• Make sure connections are secure between the terminals. SD Memory Card or data may be corrupted if disconnected while the camera is recording or reading data.
• Keep the electric cable cover closed when not using the AC adapter.

Be sure to read the manual of the AC adapter kit K-AC84 when using the AC adapter.
Inserting/Removing the SD Memory Card

This camera uses either an SD Memory Card or an SDHC Memory Card. (Both cards are referred to as SD Memory Cards hereafter.) Make sure the camera is turned off before inserting or removing the SD Memory Card (commercially available).

1. Make sure that the camera is turned off.

2. Slide the card cover in the direction of the arrow and then lift it to open (1→2).

3. Insert the card all the way with the SD Memory Card label facing toward the monitor.

**Caution:**
- Do not remove the SD Memory Card while the card access lamp is lit.
- Use this camera to format (initialize) an SD Memory Card that is unused or has been used on other cameras or digital devices. Refer to “Formatting an SD Memory Card” (p.242) for details on formatting.
- Use a high-speed memory card when recording movies. If the write speed cannot keep up with the recording speed, the writing may stop during recording.
Push the SD Memory Card in once to remove.

4 Close the card cover (③) and then slide it in the direction of the arrow (④).

Precautions When Using the SD Memory Card

- The SD Memory Card is equipped with a write-protect switch. Setting the switch to LOCK prevents new data from being recorded on the card, the stored data from being deleted, and the card from being formatted by the camera or computer.
- Care should be taken when removing the SD Memory Card immediately after using the camera because the card may be hot.
- Do not open the card cover, remove the SD Memory Card or turn the camera off while images are being played back or saved to the card, or the camera is connected to a computer with the USB cable. Doing so may cause the data to be lost or the card to be damaged.
- Do not bend the SD Memory Card or subject it to violent impact. Keep it away from water and store away from high temperatures.
- Do not remove the SD Memory Card during formatting. The card may be damaged and become unusable.
- Data on the SD Memory Card may be deleted in the following circumstances. We do not accept any liability for data that is deleted if
  1. the SD Memory Card is mishandled by the user.
  2. the SD Memory Card is exposed to static electricity or electrical interference.
  3. the SD Memory Card has not been used for a long time.
  4. the SD Memory Card is ejected or the batteries are removed while the data on the card is being recorded or accessed.
Getting Started

Choose the number of recorded pixels (size) and quality level (JPEG data compression rate) of pictures according to how you intend to use the pictures you have taken. Pictures with larger recorded pixels or more stars (★) are clearer when printed. However, the number of pictures that can be taken (the number of pictures that can be recorded on an SD Memory Card) decreases with larger file sizes. The quality of the captured photo or printed picture depends on the quality level, exposure control, resolution of the printer and a variety of other factors so you do not need to select more than the required number of pixels. For example, to print in postcard size, 2M (1728×1152) is adequate. Set the appropriate recorded pixels and quality level depending on how the picture will be used.

Setting the JPEG Recorded Pixels (p.174)
Setting the JPEG Quality Level (p.175)

Recorded Pixels and Quality Level

When the File Format is JPEG

Choose the number of recorded pixels (size) and quality level (JPEG data compression rate) of pictures according to how you intend to use the pictures you have taken. Pictures with larger recorded pixels or more stars (★) are clearer when printed. However, the number of pictures that can be taken (the number of pictures that can be recorded on an SD Memory Card) decreases with larger file sizes. The quality of the captured photo or printed picture depends on the quality level, exposure control, resolution of the printer and a variety of other factors so you do not need to select more than the required number of pixels. For example, to print in postcard size, 2M (1728×1152) is adequate. Set the appropriate recorded pixels and quality level depending on how the picture will be used.

Setting the JPEG Recorded Pixels (p.174)
Setting the JPEG Quality Level (p.175)
JPEG Recorded Pixels, JPEG Quality and Approximate Image Storage Capacity

(When using a 1 GB SD Memory Card)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>JPEG Rec. Pixels</th>
<th>JPEG Quality</th>
<th>★★★ Best</th>
<th>★★ Better</th>
<th>★ Good</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>12M (4288×2848)</td>
<td>138</td>
<td>244</td>
<td>479</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10M (3936×2624)</td>
<td>163</td>
<td>289</td>
<td>564</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6M (3072×2048)</td>
<td>267</td>
<td>468</td>
<td>902</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2M (1728×1152)</td>
<td>805</td>
<td>1373</td>
<td>2518</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

• The number of storable images may vary depending on the subject, shooting conditions, shooting mode and SD Memory Card, etc.

When the number of storable images exceeds 500, captured images are divided into folders containing 500 images each. However, in Exposure Bracketing, images will be stored in the same folder until shooting is completed, even if the number of images exceeds 500.

When the File Format is RAW

With the K-x, you can record in the versatile JPEG format or the high quality and editable RAW format. For RAW file format, you can select PENTAX’s original PEF format or general-purpose DNG (Digital Negative) format designed by Adobe Systems. On a 1 GB SD Memory Card, you can record up to 48 images in both PEF and DNG formats.

Setting the File Format (p.177)
Attaching the Lens

Attach a proper lens to the camera’s body.
When you use one of the following lenses with the K-α, all the camera’s capture modes will be available.
(a) DA, DA L, D FA, FA J lenses
(b) Lenses with an Aperture A (Auto) position, when used in the A position

Turn the camera off before attaching or removing the lens to prevent unexpected lens movement.

1 Check that the camera is turned off.

2 Remove the body mount cover (1) and lens mount cover (2).
Be sure to put the lens down with the lens mount side facing upward to protect the lens mount from damage.

3 Align the Lens mount index (red dots: 3) on the camera and the lens, and secure by turning the lens clockwise until it clicks.
After attaching, turn the lens counterclockwise to check that the lens is locked in place.

• When lenses described in (b) are used in a position other than A, some functions will be restricted. Refer to “Notes on [22. Using Aperture Ring]” (p.284).
• With factory default settings, the camera will not work with lenses other than those listed above and accessories. Set [22. Using Aperture Ring] to [Permitted] in the [C Custom Setting 4] menu to use them. (p.284)
4 Remove the front lens cap by pushing the indicated portions inward.

To detach the lens, hold down the lens unlock button (4) and turn the lens counterclockwise.

• We assume no responsibility nor liability for accidents, damages and malfunctions resulting from the use of lenses made by other manufacturers.
• The camera body and lens mount incorporate lens information contacts and an AF coupler. Dirt, dust, or corrosion may damage the electrical system. When necessary, clean the contacts with a soft dry cloth.

memo The body mount cover (1) is a cover to prevent scratches and block dust when shipped. Body Mount Cap K is sold separately and has a lock function.
Adjust the viewfinder diopter to suit your eyesight. If it is difficult to see the viewfinder image clearly, slide the diopter adjustment lever sideways. You can adjust the diopter from approximately $-2.5$ to $+1.5$ m$^{-1}$.

1 Look through the viewfinder and slide the diopter adjustment lever left or right.

Adjust the lever until the AF frame in the viewfinder is focused. Point the camera at a white wall or other bright and consistent surface.

- The Eyecup FQ is attached to the viewfinder portion when the camera leaves the factory. Diopter adjustment is available with the Eyecup FQ attached. However, adjustment is easier with the eyecup removed.
- To remove the Eyecup FQ, pull it out in the direction of the arrow. To attach the Eyecup FQ, align it with the groove on the viewfinder eyepiece and push it into position.
- If it is difficult to see the viewfinder image clearly even if you use the diopter adjustment lever, use the optional diopter correction lens adapter M. However, the Eyecup FQ must be removed to use this adapter. (p.291)
1 Turn the main switch to [ON].

The camera will turn on.

Set the main switch to the position [OFF] to turn off the camera.

• Always turn the camera off when not in use.
• The power will automatically turn off when you do not perform any operations within a set period of time. To reactivate the camera after it turns off automatically, turn it on again or perform any of the following.
  - Press the shutter release button halfway.
  - Press the button.
  - Press the button.
• By default, the camera is set to turn off automatically after 1 minute of inactivity. You can change the setting in [Auto Power Off] of the [Set-up 3] menu. (p.253)
Initial Settings

The first time the camera is turned on after purchasing, the [Language/言語] screen appears on the monitor. Follow the procedure below to set the language displayed on the monitor and the current date and time. Once these settings are made, you will not need to set them again when you turn on your camera.

If the [Date Adjustment] screen appears, set the date and time by following the procedure in “Setting the Date and Time” (p.56).

You can choose the language in which the menus, error messages, etc. are displayed from the following: English, French, German, Spanish, Portuguese, Italian, Dutch, Danish, Swedish, Finnish, Polish, Czech, Hungarian, Turkish, Greek, Russian, Korean, Chinese (traditional/simplified) and Japanese.

1. Use the four-way controller (▲▼◄►) to select the desired language.
2 Press the OK button.
The [Initial Setting] screen for the selected language appears.
Press the four-way controller (▼) twice and proceed to Step 10 of p.54 if [Hometown] does not have to be changed.

3 Press the four-way controller (▼).
The cursor moves to 

4 Press the four-way controller (►).
The [Hometown] screen appears.

5 Use the four-way controller (◄►) to select a city.

6 Press the four-way controller (▼).
The cursor moves to [DST] (daylight saving time).

7 Use the four-way controller (◄►) to select ✓ or □.

8 Press the OK button.
The camera returns to the [Initial Setting] screen.

9 Press the four-way controller (▼).
The cursor moves to [Text Size].
10 Press the four-way controller (▶) and use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Standard] or [Large].
Selecting [Large] magnifies the selected menu item.

11 Press the OK button.

12 Press the four-way controller (▼) to select [Settings complete].

13 Press the OK button.
The [Date Adjustment] screen appears.

*memo* In this manual, the menu screens hereafter are described with [Text Size] set to [Standard].
When the Wrong Language is Set

If you mistakenly select the wrong language in the [Language/言語] screen and proceed to the [Date Adjustment] screen, you can perform the following operation to set the language back.

If you have proceeded to switch the camera to Capture mode (and the camera is ready to take a picture), perform the following operation from Step 2 to set the language back.

1. Press the MENU button once to display the guides on the monitor.

   The screen shown on the right is an example of the guides displayed. The displayed screen will vary depending on the selected language.

   The guides appear on the monitor for 3 seconds.

2. Press the MENU button once.

   [◢ 1] is displayed in the upper tab.

3. Press the four-way controller (▸) five times.

   [ᑖ 1] is displayed in the upper tab.

4. Press the four-way controller (▼) to select [Language/言語].

5. Press the four-way controller (▸).

   The [Language/言語] screen appears.

6. Use the four-way controller (▲ ▼ ◄ ▸) to select the desired language and press the OK button.

   The [☟ Set-up 1] menu in the selected language appears.

   Refer to the following pages and set the desired city for [Hometown] and the current date and time as necessary.

   • To change the hometown: “Setting the World Time” (p.244)
   • To change the date and time: “Changing the Date and Time Display” (p.244)
Setting the Date and Time

Set the current date and time and the display style.

1. Press the four-way controller (►).
   The frame moves to [mm/dd/yy].

2. Use the four-way controller (▲ ▼) to choose the date format.
   Choose [mm/dd/yy], [dd/mm/yy] or [yy/mm/dd].

3. Press the four-way controller (►).
   The frame moves to [24h].

4. Use the four-way controller (▲ ▼) to select 24h (24-hour display) or 12h (12-hour display).

5. Press the four-way controller (►).
   The frame returns to [Date Format].

Memo:
- When the hometown and the date and time are not set, the [Initial Setting] screen or [Date Adjustment] screen will be displayed when the camera is turned on again.
- If you have not proceeded to the [Date Adjustment] screen, you can reselect a language using the four-way controller (►) in the [Language/言語] screen.
6 Press the four-way controller (▼).
The frame moves to [Date].

7 Press the four-way controller (▲).
The frame moves to the month.

8 Use the four-way controller (▲ ▼) to set the month.
Set the day and year in the same manner. Next, set the time.
If you select [12h] in Step 4, the setting switches between am and pm depending on the time.

9 Press the four-way controller (▼) to select [Settings complete].

10 Press the OK button.
The camera returns to the status screen and is ready to take a picture. If you set the date and time with the menu operations, the screen will return to the [Set-up 1] menu. In this case, press the MENU button.

Pressing the MENU button while adjusting the date cancels the settings made up to that point and switches the camera to Capture mode. If the power is turned on when the date and time are not set, the [Date Adjustment] screen is displayed if the initial settings have been completed. You can also set the date later by menu operations. (p.244)

• When you press the OK button in Step 10, the camera clock is reset to 00 seconds. To set the exact time, press the OK button when the time signal (on the TV, radio, etc.) reaches 00 seconds.
• You can change the language and date and time settings with menu operations. (p.244, p.247)
3 Basic Operations

This chapter explains basic operations for shooting by setting mode dial to [AUTO PICT] (Auto Picture) to ensure successful capturing.

For information about advanced functions and settings for taking pictures, refer to chapter 4 and onward.

Basic Shooting Operation ........................................................... 60
Using a Zoom Lens ................................................................. 66
Using the Built-in Flash ......................................................... 67
Playing Back Pictures .............................................................. 74
Basic Operations

Basic Shooting Operation

Holding the Camera

How you hold the camera is important when taking pictures.
- Hold the camera firmly with both hands and keep your elbows close to your body.
- Press the shutter release button gently when taking a picture.

| Horizontal position | Vertical position |

- To reduce camera shake, support your body or the camera on a solid object such as a table, tree, or wall.
- Although there are individual differences among photographers, the limit shutter speed for a handheld camera is generally 1/(focal length × 1.5). For example, it is 1/75 of a second for a focal length of 50 mm and 1/150 of a second for 100 mm. Use a tripod or the Shake Reduction function (p.128) when using a lower shutter speed.
- When using a telephoto lens, a tripod that is heavier than the total weight of the camera and lens is recommended to avoid camera shake.
- Do not use the Shake Reduction function when using the camera on a tripod. (p.129)
Letting the Camera Choose the Optimal Settings

The *K-α* features various capture modes, focus modes, and drive modes for expressing your photographic vision. This section explains how to take pictures by simply pressing the shutter release button.

1 Set the mode dial to AUTO PICT.
   The camera will select the optimal capture mode for the subject.
   - Selecting the Appropriate Capture Mode (p.83)

2 Set the focus mode lever to AF.
   The focus mode changes to AF (Autofocus) mode.
   When the shutter release button is pressed halfway in AF, the lens focuses automatically. (p.112)
3 Look through the viewfinder to view the subject.
A zoom lens can be used to change the size of the subject in the viewfinder. (p.66)

4 Position the subject inside the AF frame and press the shutter release button halfway.
The autofocus system operates. The focus indicator ◯ appears in the viewfinder when the subject comes into focus.
When set to [AUTO PICT] (Auto Picture) mode, the optimal capture mode is automatically selected from ◇ (Standard), ◆ (Portrait), ▲ (Landscape), ◊ (Macro), ◄ (Moving Object) or ◆ (Night Scene Portrait).
The built-in flash pops up automatically when necessary.
- Operating the shutter release button (p.64)
- Subjects that are difficult to focus on (p.65)
- Using the Built-in Flash (p.67)

5 Press the shutter release button fully.
The picture is taken.
Review the captured image on the monitor.

The image appears for 1 second on the monitor shortly after capturing (Instant Review).

- Setting the Display for Instant Review (p.249)

You can magnify the image during Instant Review with the e-dial. (p.202)
You can delete the image during Instant Review by pressing the $UP/$ button.

- Deleting a Single Image (p.75)

• You can set the camera so that pressing the AF/AE-L button will focus automatically, in the same way as pressing the shutter release button halfway. (p.114)
• You can preview the image on the monitor and check the composition, exposure, and focus before taking pictures. (p.124)
Operating the shutter release button

The shutter release button has two working positions.

- Not pressed
- Pressed halfway (first position)
- Pressed fully (second position)

Pressing it down halfway (first position) turns on the viewfinder indicators and the autofocus system operates. Pressing it fully (second position) takes a picture.

• Press the shutter release button gently when taking a picture to prevent camera shake.
• Practice pressing the shutter release button halfway/fully to learn where the first position and second position are.
• The viewfinder indicators are displayed while the shutter release button is pressed halfway. The indicators are displayed for about 10 seconds (default setting) while the exposure metering timer is on after you take your finger off the button. (p.30, p.106)
Subjects that are difficult to focus on

The autofocus mechanism is not perfect. Focusing may be difficult when taking pictures under the following conditions. These also apply to manual focusing using the focus indicator in the viewfinder.

(a) Extremely low-contrast subjects such as a white wall in the focusing area
(b) Subjects which do not reflect much light within the focusing area
(c) Fast moving objects
(d) Strongly reflected light or strong backlighting (bright background)
(e) If repeating vertical or horizontal line patterns appear within the focusing area
(f) Multiple subjects in the foreground and background within the focusing area

If the subject cannot be focused automatically, set the focus mode lever to MF and use the manual focus mode to focus on the subject with the aid of the matte field in the viewfinder. (p.122)

**Caution**

The subject may not be focused even when the (focus indicator) is displayed when (e) and (f) above apply.
Basic Operations

Using a Zoom Lens

Enlarge the subject (telephoto) or capture a wider area (wide angle) with a zoom lens. Adjust the subject to the desired size and take pictures.

1. **Turn the zoom ring to the right or left.**
   
   Turn the zoom ring clockwise for telephoto and counterclockwise for wide angle.

![Wide Angle](image1) ![Telephoto](image2)

- The smaller the number displayed for the focal length, the wider the angle. The larger the number, the more magnified the image appears.
- Power Zoom functions (Image Size Tracking, Zoom Clip, and Auto Zoom Effect) are not compatible with this camera.
Use the following procedures to take pictures in low light or backlit conditions or when you want to use the built-in flash. The built-in flash is optimum at about 0.7 m to 5 m from the subject. Exposure will not be properly controlled and vignetting (darkening of the corners of the image due to a lack of light) may occur when used at a distance closer than 0.7 m (this distance varies slightly depending on the lens being used and the set sensitivity (p.160)).

**Compatibility of built-in flash and lens**

Vignetting may occur depending on the lens being used and the capture conditions. We recommend taking a test shot to check the compatibility.

- When using the built-in flash, remove the lens hood before shooting.
- The built-in flash fully discharges for lenses without a function to set aperture lens ring to A (Auto).

For details on the built-in flash and instructions on how to take pictures with an external flash, refer to the “Using the Flash” (p.155).

**Setting the Flash Mode**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Flash Mode</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>☑️ A Auto Flash</td>
<td>The camera automatically measures the ambient light and determines whether to use the flash. The flash pops up and discharges automatically when necessary, such as when using a shutter speed likely to cause camera shake or in backlit conditions (except when in ▲ (Landscape), ◄ (Moving Object) or ◼ (Night Snap) in SCN (Scene) mode). The flash may pop up but may not discharge if the camera determines that the flash is not necessary.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☑️ Manual Flash</td>
<td>Discharges the flash manually. Discharges when the flash is popped up, does not discharge when retracted.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The flash modes that can be selected differ depending on the capture mode.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Flash Mode</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Auto Flash+Red-eye Reduction</td>
<td>Discharges a pre-flash for red-eye reduction before the automatic flash.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual Flash+ Red-eye Reduct.</td>
<td>Discharges the flash manually. A pre-flash for red-eye reduction is discharged before the main flash.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slow-speed Sync</td>
<td>Sets to a slow shutter speed depending on the brightness. For example, when using this to shoot a portrait with the sunset in the background, both the person and the background are captured beautifully.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slow-speed Sync+ Red-eye</td>
<td>Discharges a pre-flash for red-eye reduction before the main flash is discharged with Slow-speed Sync.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trailing Curtain Sync</td>
<td>Discharges the flash immediately before closing the shutter curtain. Captures moving objects as if they are leaving a trail behind. (p.158)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wireless Mode</td>
<td>You can synchronize a dedicated external flash (AF540FGZ or AF360FGZ) without using a sync cord. (p.165)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The flash modes that can be selected differ depending on the capture mode.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Capture Mode</th>
<th>Selectable Flash Mode</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AUTO PICT / / / / / / SCN</td>
<td>/ / / / / / W</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P/Sv/Av</td>
<td>/ / / / / / SLOW SLOW SLOW SLOW W</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tv/M</td>
<td>/ / / / / / W</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **Press the four-way controller (▼) in Capture mode.**

The [Flash Mode] screen appears.

The flash modes that can be selected for the set capture mode appear.
2 **Use the four-way controller (↑↓) to select a flash mode.**

Turn the e-dial to perform the flash exposure compensation. (p.72)

3 **Press the OK button.**

The camera is ready to take a picture.

---

**Using Auto Flash Discharge Mode \( \mathcal{A}, \mathcal{A} \) (Automatic Flash Pop-up)**

1 **Set the mode dial to AUTO PICT, \( \mathcal{A}, \mathcal{A}, \mathcal{A}, \mathcal{A} \) or SCN.**

The flash is deactivated when \( \mathcal{A} \) (Night Scene), \( \mathcal{A} \) (Sunset), \( \mathcal{A} \) (Stage Lighting), \( \mathcal{A} \) (Candlelight) or \( \mathcal{A} \) (Museum) is selected in SCN (Scene) mode. The built-in flash does not pop up when set to \( \mathcal{A} \) (Night Snap) in SCN (Scene) mode.

2 **Press the shutter release button halfway.**

The built-in flash pops up if necessary and begins charging. When the flash is fully charged, \( \mathcal{A} \) appears in the viewfinder. (p.30)

3 **Press the shutter release button fully.**

The picture is taken.
4 Push down on the portion indicated in the illustration to retract the built-in flash.

Switch between ⌹ (Auto Flash Discharge) and ⌹ (Manual Flash Discharge) by pressing the ⌹UP/ button while the built-in flash is popped up.

Using Manual Flash Discharge Mode ⌹, ⌹

1 Press the ⌹UP/ button.

The built-in flash pops up and begins charging. The ⌹ mode is used regardless of the flash mode settings. When the flash is fully charged, ⌹ appears in the viewfinder. (p.30)

2 Press the shutter release button fully.

The flash discharges and the picture is taken.

3 Push the built-in flash down to retract.
When the mode dial is set to (Flash Off), the built-in flash will not pop up even if the button is pressed.

Using red-eye reduction flash

“Red-eye” is the phenomenon where eyes look reddish in photographs taken in dark environments with a flash. This is caused by the reflection of the electronic flash in the retina of the eye. Red-eye occurs because pupils are dilated in dark environments. This phenomenon cannot be averted but the following measures can be used to combat it.

- Brighten the surroundings when shooting.
- Set to wide angle and move closer to the subject if a zoom lens is in use.
- Use a flash that supports red-eye reduction.
- Position the flash as far away from the camera as possible when using an external flash.

The red-eye reduction function on this camera reduces red-eye by discharging the flash twice. With the red-eye reduction function, the pre-flash is discharged just before the shutter is released. This reduces pupil dilation. The main flash is then discharged while the pupils are smaller, reducing the red-eye effect.

To use the red-eye reduction function in Picture mode or SCN (Scene) mode, select or . Set to or in other modes.
Daylight-Sync Shooting

In daylight conditions, the flash will eliminate shadows when a portrait picture is taken with a person’s face cast in shadow. Use of the flash in this way is called Daylight-Sync Shooting. The \( \ddagger \) (Manual Flash Discharge) mode is used when shooting with Daylight-Sync Shooting.

- **Taking pictures**
  1. Pop up the built-in flash manually and confirm that the flash mode is set to \( \ddagger \). (p.70)
  2. Confirm that the flash is fully charged.
  3. Take a picture.

![Without Daylight-Sync](image1.png)  ![With Daylight-Sync](image2.png)

- **memo**
The picture may be overexposed if the background is too bright.

Compensating Flash Output

You can change the flash output in a range of \(-2.0\) to \(+1.0\). The following flash compensation values can be set according to the step interval set in [1. EV Steps] (p.108) of the [C Custom Setting 1] menu.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step Interval</th>
<th>Flash Compensation Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1/3 EV</td>
<td>(-2.0, -1.7, -1.3, -1.0, -0.7, -0.3, 0.0, +0.3, +0.7, +1.0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/2 EV</td>
<td>(-2.0, -1.5, -1.0, -0.5, 0.0, +0.5, +1.0)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Set the flash compensation value by turning the e-dial in the [Flash Mode] screen. Pressing the œ (Green) button returns the flash exposure compensation to the default value (0.0). (Available only when [Green Button] is assigned to the œ (Green) button in [Green Button] of the [Rec. Mode 4] menu) (p.179).

- If the maximum flash output is exceeded when correcting to the plus (+) side, the compensation will not be effective.
- Compensating to the minus (–) side may not affect the image if the subject is too close, the aperture value is small or sensitivity is high.
- The flash compensation is also effective for external flash units which support P-TTL auto flash mode.

### Allowing Shooting while Charging the Flash

You can set the camera to enable shooting while the flash is being charged. Set [16. Release While Charging] to [On] in the [Custom Setting 3] menu (p.82). By default, pictures cannot be taken while the built-in flash is charging.
Playing Back Pictures

Playing Back Images

You can play back captured images with the camera.

Use the provided “PENTAX Digital Camera Utility 4” software to play back pictures using a computer. Refer to “Using the Provided Software” (p.268) for details on the software.

1 Press the \( \text{
\begin{array}{c}
\text{Q} \\
\end{array}\) \) button.

The camera enters Playback mode and the most recently captured image (image with the highest file number) is displayed on the monitor. (For movies, only the first frame is displayed on the monitor.)

Press the INFO button during playback to switch the information display such as the image data for the displayed image.

Refer to p.25 for display information details.

2 Press the four-way controller (\( \text{
\begin{array}{c}
\text{\leftarrow} \\
\text{\rightarrow} \\
\end{array}\) )\).

\( \text{\leftarrow} \) : Displays the previous image.

\( \text{\rightarrow} \) : Displays the next image.

Refer to “Playback Functions” (p.199) for details on the playback function.
Deleting a Single Image

You can delete one image at a time.

- Deleted images cannot be restored.
- Protected images cannot be deleted. (p.219)

1. Press the 
   button and use the four-way controller ( ◄ ►) to select an image to delete.

2. Press the 
   button. The delete confirmation screen appears.

3. Use the four-way controller ( ▲ ▼) to select [Delete].
   Select a file format to delete for images saved in RAW+ format.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Delete JPEG</th>
<th>Deletes only the JPEG image.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Delete RAW</td>
<td>Deletes only the RAW image.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delete RAW+JPEG</td>
<td>Deletes images in both file formats.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Press the OK button.
   The image is deleted.

When deleting multiple images at once, refer to “Deleting Multiple Images” (p.215).
4 Shooting Functions

This chapter describes the various basic and advanced shooting functions available with the K-α.

How to Operate the Shooting Functions ..........78
Selecting the Appropriate Capture Mode ..........83
Setting the Exposure ...............................................88
Focusing ..........................................................................112
Checking the Composition, Exposure and Focus Before Shooting (Preview) .................................124
Using Shake Reduction Function to Prevent Camera Shake .......................................................128
Taking Pictures Continuously ..............................136
Taking Pictures Using Digital Filters .....................140
Shooting with the Live View ..................................143
How to Operate the Shooting Functions

You can change capture-related settings using the direct keys, control panel, [Rec. Mode] menus or [Custom Setting] menus.

For details on how to operate the menus, refer to “Using the Menus” (p.35).

Direct Keys Setting Items

Press the four-way controller (▲▼◄►) or OK button in Capture mode to set the following items.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key</th>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>▲</td>
<td>Drive Mode</td>
<td>Selects Continuous shooting, Self-timer, Remote Control or Exposure Bracketing shooting.</td>
<td>p.136</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>p.131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>p.134</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>p.109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>▼</td>
<td>Flash Mode</td>
<td>Sets the method of flash discharge.</td>
<td>p.67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>◄</td>
<td>White Balance</td>
<td>Adjusts the color balance to match the type of the light source illuminating the subject.</td>
<td>p.182</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>►</td>
<td>Sensitivity</td>
<td>Sets the ISO sensitivity.</td>
<td>p.90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OK</td>
<td>Select AF Point</td>
<td>Sets the focusing area.</td>
<td>p.117</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The following settings can be performed in the Rec. Mode 1-4 menus. Press the MENU button in Capture mode to display the [Rec. Mode 1] menu.

### Rec. Mode Menu Setting Items

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Menu</th>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Custom Image*</td>
<td>Sets the image finishing tone such as color and contrast before shooting an image.</td>
<td>p.194</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>File Format*</td>
<td>Sets the file format.</td>
<td>p.177</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>JPEG Recorded Pixels*</td>
<td>Sets the recording size of images for JPEG shooting.</td>
<td>p.174</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>JPEG Quality*</td>
<td>Sets the image quality for JPEG shooting.</td>
<td>p.175</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>D-Range Setting*</td>
<td>Expands the dynamic range and prevents bright and dark areas from occurring.</td>
<td>p.189 p.190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Lens Correction*</td>
<td>Corrects distortions and chromatic aberrations of magnification occurring due to lens properties.</td>
<td>p.192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Cross Processing*</td>
<td>Changes the hues and contrast by performing digital cross processing.</td>
<td>p.196</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Digital Filter*</td>
<td>Applies a digital filter effect when taking pictures.</td>
<td>p.140</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>HDR Capture*</td>
<td>Enables capturing images at high dynamic range.</td>
<td>p.191</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Multi-exposure</td>
<td>Sets the Multi-exposure shooting settings.</td>
<td>p.138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>AF Mode*</td>
<td>Selects the autofocus mode.</td>
<td>p.115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>AE Metering*</td>
<td>Selects the part of the viewfinder to use for measuring brightness and determining exposure.</td>
<td>p.104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Select AF Point*</td>
<td>Selects the part of the viewfinder to focus on.</td>
<td>p.117</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Shooting Functions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Menu</th>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>☀3</td>
<td>Movie</td>
<td>Sets the movie settings.</td>
<td>p.148</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Live View</td>
<td>Sets the Live View display settings.</td>
<td>p.144</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Status Screen</td>
<td>Sets the status screen display color settings.</td>
<td>p.248</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Instant Review</td>
<td>Sets the Instant Review display settings.</td>
<td>p.249</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Color Space</td>
<td>Sets the color space to use.</td>
<td>p.187</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>RAW File Format</td>
<td>Sets the file format for RAW shooting.</td>
<td>p.178</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☀4</td>
<td>Green Button</td>
<td>Assigns the function to be called up when the (Green) button is pressed.</td>
<td>p.179</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Memory</td>
<td>Sets the settings to save when the power is turned off.</td>
<td>p.260</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Shake Reduction*</td>
<td>Sets the Shake Reduction function.</td>
<td>p.129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Input Focal Length</td>
<td>Sets the focal length when using a lens for which focal length information cannot be obtained.</td>
<td>p.130</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Can be set using the control panel.
# Custom Setting Menu Setting Items

Set the [Custom Setting 1-4] menus to fully use the functions of a SLR camera.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Menu</th>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>C1</td>
<td>1. EV Steps</td>
<td>Sets the adjustment steps for exposure.</td>
<td>p.108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2. Sensitivity Steps</td>
<td>Sets the adjustment steps for ISO sensitivity.</td>
<td>p.91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3. Expanded Sensitivity</td>
<td>Expands the lower and upper sensitivity limits.</td>
<td>p.91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4. Meter Operating Time</td>
<td>Sets the exposure metering time.</td>
<td>p.106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5. AE-L with AF Locked</td>
<td>Sets whether to lock the exposure value when the focus is locked.</td>
<td>p.120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6. Link AE to AF Point</td>
<td>Sets whether to link the exposure and AF point in the focusing area during multi-segment metering.</td>
<td>p.106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7. Auto Bracketing Order</td>
<td>Sets the order for Exposure Bracketing shooting.</td>
<td>p.110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8. WB When Using Flash</td>
<td>Sets the white balance setting when using flash.</td>
<td>p.183</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9. AWB in Tungsten Light</td>
<td>Sets whether to adjust the tungsten light color tone when the white balance is set to AWB (Auto White Balance).</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10. AF/AE-L Button</td>
<td>Sets the function used when the AF/AE-L button is pressed.</td>
<td>p.108 p.114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11. AF with Remote Control</td>
<td>Sets whether to use Autofocus when shooting with remote control.</td>
<td>p.135</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C2</td>
<td>12. Remote Control in Bulb</td>
<td>While using the remote control with the shutter speed set to Bulb, sets whether to start exposure with a press and stop it with another press of the release button on the remote control unit, or to keep the shutter open as long as the release button on the remote control unit is kept pressed.</td>
<td>p.104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>13. Slow Shutter Speed NR</td>
<td>Sets whether to use Noise Reduction in slow speed shooting.</td>
<td>p.92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>14. High-ISO NR</td>
<td>Sets whether to use Noise Reduction when shooting with a high ISO sensitivity. Select from three levels.</td>
<td>p.92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Menu</td>
<td>Item</td>
<td>Function</td>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>C3</strong></td>
<td>15. High-ISO NR Start Level</td>
<td>High-ISO NR is activated when shooting with a sensitivity higher than the set sensitivity.</td>
<td>p.92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>16. Release While Charging</td>
<td>Sets whether to release shutter while the built-in flash is charging.</td>
<td>p.73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>17. Flash in Wireless Mode</td>
<td>Sets the built-in flash discharge method in the wireless mode.</td>
<td>p.166</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>18. Saving Rotation Info</td>
<td>Sets whether to save rotation information when shooting.</td>
<td>p.213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>19. Auto Image Rotation</td>
<td>Sets whether to perform auto image rotation during playback.</td>
<td>p.213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>20. Power lamp</td>
<td>Changes the brightness of the power lamp.</td>
<td>p.254</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>21. Catch-in Focus</td>
<td>When set to [On], if [AF Mode] is set to AFA or AFS and a manual focus lens is attached, catch-in focus shooting is enabled and the shutter is released automatically when the subject comes into focus.</td>
<td>p.123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>C4</strong></td>
<td>22. Using Aperture Ring</td>
<td>Sets whether to enable shutter release when the lens aperture ring is set to the position other than A.</td>
<td>p.284</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Reset Custom Functions</td>
<td>Resets all the settings in the [C Custom Setting 1-4] menus to the defaults.</td>
<td>p.281</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Selecting the Appropriate Capture Mode

You can switch the capture modes by setting the icons on the mode dial to the dial indicator.

The *K-x* features various shooting modes, enabling you to take pictures with settings suited for your photographic vision.

In this manual, the capture modes are referred to as follows.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Capture Mode</th>
<th>Mode</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Picture mode</strong></td>
<td>![AUTO PICT] (Auto Picture)/ 🖼 (Portrait)/ 🕵️ (Landscape)/ 🕵️ (Macro)/ 🌅 (Moving Object)/ 🕵️ (Night Scene Portrait)/ 📸 (Flash Off) (When shooting with Live View, 🌸 (Blue Sky) and 🌅 (Sunset) can also be selected.)</td>
<td>p.84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>SCN (Scene) mode</strong></td>
<td>🌸 (Night Scene)/ 🌸 (Surf &amp; Snow)/ 🦴 (Food)/ 🌅 (Sunset)/ 🕵️ (Stage Lighting)/ 🦴 (Kids)/ 🕵️ (Pet)/ 🕵️ (Candlelight)/ 🏛️ (Museum)/ 🌅 (Night Snap)</td>
<td>p.85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Exposure mode</strong></td>
<td><strong>P</strong> (Program)/ <strong>Sv</strong> (Sensitivity Priority)/ <strong>Tv</strong> (Shutter Priority)/ <strong>Av</strong> (Aperture Priority)/ <strong>M</strong> (Manual)</td>
<td>p.87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Movie mode</strong></td>
<td>🏛️ (Movie)</td>
<td>p.148</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Picture Mode

Set the mode dial to Auto Picture, Portrait, Landscape, Macro, Moving Object or Flash Off if you cannot capture the desired image in AUTO PICT (Auto Picture) mode.

The characteristics of each mode are as follows.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mode</th>
<th>Characteristics</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>![Auto Picture]</td>
<td>The optimal capture mode is automatically selected from the 😄 (Standard), 🧡 (Portrait), 🌄 (Landscape), 😢 (Macro), 🏙️ (Moving Object) and 🌃 (Night Scene Portrait) modes. When shooting with Live View, 🌈 (Blue Sky) and 🌅 (Sunset) can also be selected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🌄 Landscape</td>
<td>Deepens the focus range, emphasizes contour and saturation of trees and the sky, and produces a vibrant image.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>😢 Macro</td>
<td>Lets you take vibrant pictures of flowers and other small subjects at short distances.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🏙️ Moving Object</td>
<td>Lets you take sharp pictures of a quickly moving subject, such as at sporting events. The drive mode is fixed to 🏅 (Continuous Shooting (Hi)).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🌃 Night Scene Portrait</td>
<td>Lets you capture people against a night view or at dusk.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>😁 Flash Off</td>
<td>The flash is deactivated. Other settings are the same as 😄 (Standard) in AUTO PICT.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Caution:**

In 🧡, even though the flash is used, the camera will use slow shutter speeds so the background areas beyond the flash’s reach will also appear correctly exposed in the picture (あと: Slow-speed Sync (p.156)). To prevent camera shake, either use the Shake Reduction function or mount the camera on a tripod.

**Memo:**

When 🌅 is automatically selected in AUTO PICT, pictures are taken in the drive mode set beforehand.
## SCN Mode

By setting the mode dial to **SCN** (Scene), you can choose from the following 10 shooting scenes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mode</th>
<th>Characteristics</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>🌃 Night Scene</td>
<td>Used for night scenes. Use a tripod, etc. to prevent shaking.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🌊 Surf &amp; Snow</td>
<td>For capturing images of dazzling backgrounds, such as snowy mountains.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🍽 Food</td>
<td>For capturing images of food. Saturation will be rather high to make it look appetizing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🌅 Sunset</td>
<td>For capturing sunrise or sunset in beautiful colors.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🎭 Stage Lighting</td>
<td>For capturing moving subjects in poorly lit place.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>👱 Kids</td>
<td>For capturing moving kids. Reproduces healthy and bright skin tone. The drive mode is fixed to 📷 (Continuous Shooting (Hi)).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🐶 Pet</td>
<td>For capturing moving pets. The drive mode is fixed to 📷 (Continuous Shooting (Hi)).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🕯 Candlelight</td>
<td>For capturing scenes in candlelight.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🏰 Museum</td>
<td>For capturing images in places where a flash is prohibited.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🕴 Night Snap</td>
<td>For taking snapshots in poorly lit place.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Caution**

The flash is deactivated in 🌃, 🌊, 🍽, 👱, and 🕯. To prevent camera shake, either use the Shake Reduction function or mount the camera on a tripod.
Selecting a Shooting Scene

1. Set the mode dial to SCN.
   The scene mode status screen appears.

2. Press the INFO button.
   The icon for the currently selected shooting scene appears in the control panel.

3. Use the four-way controller (▲▼◄►) to select [Scene Mode] and press the OK button.
   The scene mode selection screen appears.

4. Use the four-way controller (▲▼◄►) or e-dial to choose a scene mode.

5. Press the OK button.
   The camera returns to the control panel and is ready to take a picture.
When the **MENU** button is pressed while the mode dial is set to **SCN** (Scene), the [**SCN** Scene] menu appears. The scene mode can also be selected from the [**SCN** Scene] menu.

---

**Exposure Mode**

Use the exposure modes to change the sensitivity, shutter speed and aperture and take pictures according to your own photographic vision.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mode</th>
<th>Characteristics</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>P</strong> Program</td>
<td>Automatically sets the shutter speed and aperture value to obtain the proper exposure according to Program line when taking pictures.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sv</strong> Sensitivity Priority</td>
<td>Automatically sets the shutter speed and aperture value to obtain the proper exposure according to the set sensitivity.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Tv</strong> Shutter Priority</td>
<td>Lets you set the desired shutter speed to freeze or emphasize subject movement. Take pictures of fast moving subjects that look still or subjects that give a sense of movement.</td>
<td>p.93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Av</strong> Aperture Priority</td>
<td>Lets you set the desired aperture value for controlling the depth of field. Use it to obtain a blurred or sharp background.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M</strong> Manual</td>
<td>Lets you set the shutter speed and aperture value to capture the picture with creative intent.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Setting the Exposure

**Effect of Aperture and Shutter Speed**

Correct exposure of the subject is determined by the combination of shutter speed and aperture setting. There are many correct combinations of shutter speed and aperture value for a particular subject. Different combinations produce different effects.

**Effect of Shutter Speed**

By changing the shutter speed, you can manipulate how time is expressed in the pictures you create. Unlike with your own naked eyes, in a picture you can capture a fraction of a moment or a whole period of time, creating different effects.

Use the **Tv** (Shutter Priority) mode.

- **Using slower shutter speed**
  If the subject is moving, the image will be blurred because the shutter is open longer. It is possible to enhance the effect of motion (rivers, waterfalls, waves, etc.) by intentionally using a slower shutter speed.

- **Using faster shutter speed**
  Choosing a faster shutter speed will allow freezing the action of a moving subject. A faster shutter speed also helps to prevent camera shake.

**Effect of Aperture**

By changing the aperture, you can control the depth of the area that appears in focus in the picture (the depth of field). By either narrowing the focus to emphasize a single point or giving depth to your picture instead you can completely change the feel of the picture you create.

Use the **Av** (Aperture Priority) mode.
• **Opening the aperture (reduce the aperture value)**

Objects closer and farther than the focused subject will be more out of focus. For instance, if you take a picture of a flower against a landscape with the aperture open, the landscape in front and behind the flower will be blurred, emphasizing only the flower.

• **Closing the aperture (increase the aperture value)**

The range in focus expands forward and backward. For instance, if you take a picture of a flower against a landscape with the aperture narrowed, the landscape in front and behind the flower will be in focus.

---

**Aperture and Depth of Field**

The following table summarizes how the aperture affects the depth of field. The depth of field may also change depending on the lens used and the distance to the subject.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Aperture</th>
<th>Open (Smaller value)</th>
<th>Close (Larger value)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Depth of field</td>
<td>Shallow</td>
<td>Deep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Area of focus</td>
<td>Narrow</td>
<td>Wide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lens focal length</td>
<td>Longer (Telephoto)</td>
<td>Shorter (Wide-angle)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Distance to the subject</td>
<td>Near</td>
<td>Far</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- The depth of field for the $K-x$ differs depending on the lens but compared to a 35 mm camera, the value is roughly one aperture setting lower (the focused range becomes narrower).
- The wider the wide-angle lens, and the farther away the subject, the deeper the depth of field is (some zoom lenses do not have a scale for depth of field because of their designs).
Setting the Sensitivity

You can set the sensitivity to suit the brightness of the surroundings. The sensitivity can be set to [AUTO] or within a sensitivity range equivalent to ISO 200 to 6400. The default setting is [AUTO].

1. Press the four-way controller (▲) in Capture mode.
   The [Sensitivity] screen appears.

2. Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [AUTO Setting] or [Fixed Value].

3. Use the four-way controller (◄►) to change the ISO sensitivity.
   For ISO AUTO, change the maximum sensitivity.

4. Press the OK button.
   The camera is ready to take a picture.
Dynamic range is the ratio that indicates the light level expressed by the CMOS sensor pixels from bright areas to dark areas. The larger it is, the better the whole range from dark to bright areas will appear in the picture. By expanding the dynamic range, you can expand the light level expressed by the CMOS sensor pixels, making it more difficult for bright area to occur in the image.

To expand the dynamic range, make the settings in [D-Range Setting] of the [Rec. Mode 1] menu. (p.189)
Noise Reduction

When shooting with a digital camera, image noise (image roughness or unevenness) becomes noticeable in the following situations.
- Shooting with a long exposure
- Shooting with a high sensitivity setting
- When the temperature of the CMOS sensor is high

You can reduce image noise by using Noise Reduction. However, images shot with Noise Reduction will take longer to save.

**Slow Shutter Speed NR**
Reduces noise during long exposures.

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>On</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* When the exposure time is longer than 30 seconds, the maximum sensitivity is set to ISO 3200 and Noise Reduction is automatically activated.

**High-ISO NR**
Reduces noise at high sensitivity (ISO) settings.

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>ISO 800</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>ISO 400</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>ISO 1600</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>ISO 3200</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* When the sensitivity is set to ISO 6400 or higher, Noise Reduction is automatically activated.
This camera features the following five exposure modes. Use the mode dial to change the exposure mode. (p.83)
The settings available for each exposure mode are as follows.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Exposure Mode</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>EV Compensation</th>
<th>Change Shutter Speed</th>
<th>Change Aperture Value</th>
<th>Change Sensitivity</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>P Program</td>
<td>Automatically sets the shutter speed and aperture value to obtain the proper exposure according to Program line when taking pictures.</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>p.94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sv Sensitivity Priority</td>
<td>Automatically sets the shutter speed and aperture value to obtain the proper exposure according to the set sensitivity.</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>Other than AUTO</td>
<td>p.96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tv Shutter Priority</td>
<td>Lets you set the desired shutter speed for expressing moving subjects.</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>p.97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Av Aperture Priority</td>
<td>Lets you set the aperture value for controlling the depth of field.</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>p.98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M Manual</td>
<td>Lets you set the shutter speed and aperture value to capture the picture with creative intent.</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>Other than AUTO</td>
<td>p.100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* In [Green Button] of the [Rec. Mode 4] menu, you can make the setting so that the shutter speed and/or aperture value can be changed by turning the e-dial. (p.95)
Using a Lens with an Aperture Ring

When using a lens with an aperture ring, set the aperture to the **A (AUTO)** position while holding down the auto-lock button on the lens.

Using the **P (Program) Mode**

Automatically sets the shutter speed and aperture value to obtain the proper exposure according to Program line when taking pictures. You can also use the e-dial to change the shutter speed and aperture value while maintaining the proper exposure (p.95).

1. **Set the mode dial to P.**

2. **Turn the e-dial while pressing the **Av button to adjust the exposure.**
The EV compensation value is displayed in the status screen and viewfinder.

- EV compensation value can be set in increments of 1/3 EV or 1/2 EV. Set the exposure steps in [1. EV Steps] of the [C Custom Setting 1] menu. (p.108)
- The proper exposure may not be obtained with the selected shutter speed and aperture value when the sensitivity is not set to [AUTO] (p.90).

### e-dial in Program

You can set the action for the e-dial when turned in P mode. Set in [Green Button] of the [Rec. Mode 4] menu. (This operation is available only when [Green Button] is assigned to the (Green) button.) (p.179) If the (Green) button is pressed after turning the e-dial, the camera returns to P mode.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>P SHIFT</th>
<th>Automatically adjusts the shutter speed and aperture value to obtain the proper exposure (Program shift). (default setting)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tv</td>
<td>Sets the shutter speed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Av</td>
<td>Sets the aperture value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OFF</td>
<td>Disables the e-dial operation when Program Automatic Exposure is set.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
You can set the sensitivity to suit the brightness of the subject. The shutter speed and aperture value are automatically set according to the selected sensitivity to obtain the proper exposure.

1. Set the mode dial to Sv.

2. Turn the e-dial to adjust the sensitivity.

The set values are displayed in the status screen and viewfinder.

- You can set the sensitivity to values equivalent to ISO 200 to 6400. [AUTO] is not available.
- Turn the e-dial while pressing the Av button to change the EV compensation value. (p.107)
- The sensitivity can be set in increments of 1/3 EV or 1/2 EV. Set the exposure steps in [1. EV Steps] of the [Custom Setting 1] menu. (p.108)
Using the Tv (Shutter Priority) Mode

Lets you set the desired shutter speed for expressing moving subjects. When taking pictures of a fast moving subject, you can increase the shutter speed to make the subject look still or decrease the shutter speed to have the subject show movement. The aperture value is automatically set to give the proper exposure depending on the shutter speed.

Effect of Aperture and Shutter Speed (p.88)

1. Set the mode dial to Tv.

2. Turn the e-dial to adjust the shutter speed.

   The shutter speed can be set within the range of 1/6000 to 30 seconds.

The set values are displayed in the status screen and viewfinder.
Shooting Functions

Set the aperture value for controlling the depth of field. The depth of field is deeper and the front and back of the focused object is clear when the aperture is set to a large value. The depth of field is shallower and the front and back of the focused object is blurred when the aperture is set to a small value.

The shutter speed is automatically set to the proper exposure depending on the aperture value.

1. **Set the mode dial to Av.**
2 Turn the e-dial to adjust the aperture value.

The set values are displayed in the status screen and viewfinder.

- Turn the e-dial while pressing the Av button to change the EV compensation value. (p.107)
- The aperture value can be set in increments of 1/3 EV or 1/2 EV. Set the exposure steps in [1. EV Steps] of the [Custom Setting 1] menu. (p.108)
- The proper exposure may not be obtained with the selected aperture value when the sensitivity is not set to [AUTO] (p.90).

Exposure Warning
If the subject is too bright or too dark, the shutter speed will blink in the status screen and viewfinder. When the subject is too bright, set the aperture smaller (larger number), and when too dark, open the aperture further (smaller number). Once blinking stops, you can take a picture with proper exposure. Use a commercially available ND (Neutral Density) Filter (p.305) if the subject is too bright. Use a flash if it is too dark.
Using the M (Manual) Mode

You can set the shutter speed and aperture value. This mode is suitable to take pictures of your choice by combining them. This mode is convenient for taking pictures using the same combination of the shutter speed and aperture settings or taking intentionally underexposed (darker) or overexposed (brighter) photographs.

Effect of Aperture and Shutter Speed (p.88)

1. Set the mode dial to M.

2. Turn the e-dial to adjust the shutter speed.
   The shutter speed can be set within the range of 1/6000 to 30 seconds.

3. Turn the e-dial while pressing the Av button to adjust the aperture value.
The set values are displayed in the status screen and viewfinder.

On the status screen, the e-dial indicator appears next to the shutter speed or aperture value, depending on which is being adjusted.

Of the shutter speed and aperture value, the value being adjusted is underlined in the viewfinder.

While adjusting the shutter speed or aperture value, the difference from the proper exposure (EV value) appears in the viewfinder. The proper exposure is set when [0.0] is displayed.

• When the sensitivity is set to [AUTO] and the mode dial is set to M, the sensitivity is set to the last set value.
• The shutter speed and aperture value can be set in increments of 1/3 EV or 1/2 EV. Set the exposure steps in [1. EV Steps] of the [C Custom Setting 1] menu. (p.108)
• The aperture value can also be changed by pressing the Av button once, taking your finger off the button and turning the e-dial. In this case, the aperture value is set when the Av button is pressed again or the exposure metering timer (p.106) elapses.

**Exposure Warning**

While adjusting the shutter speed or aperture value, the EV compensation value blinks in the viewfinder when the difference from the proper exposure becomes ±3.0 or larger.
Using AE Lock

If [10. AF/AE-L Button] in the [C Custom Setting 2] menu is set to [AE Lock], you can press the **AF/AE-L** button to lock the exposure value. (p.108)

Example) If the shutter speed is 1/125 sec. and aperture is F5.6 and these settings are locked with the **AF/AE-L** button, the aperture automatically changes to F11 if the shutter speed is changed to 1/30 sec. with the e-dial.

Action in M Mode

You can set the function of the ✈ (Green) button when the camera is set to M mode. Set in [Green Button] of the [Rec. Mode 4] menu. (This operation is available only when [Green Button] is assigned to the ✈ (Green) button. (p.179))

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Green Button</th>
<th>P LINE</th>
<th>Tv SHIFT</th>
<th>Av SHIFT</th>
<th>OFF</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Action in M Mode</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e-dial in Program</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sets the aperture and shutter speed to the Program Line exposure</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **P LINE**: Adjusts the aperture value and shutter speed to obtain the proper exposure according to the Program Line. (default setting)
- **Tv SHIFT**: Adjusts the shutter speed while the aperture value remains fixed to obtain the proper exposure.
- **Av SHIFT**: Adjusts the aperture value while the shutter speed remains fixed to obtain the proper exposure.
- **OFF**: Disables the ✈ button operation when the mode dial is set to M.
Using the Bulb Shooting

This setting is useful when shooting night scenes and fireworks which require the long exposures.

1 Set the mode dial to M.

2 Turn the e-dial and set the shutter speed to Bulb.
   Bulb appears after the slowest shutter speed (30 sec.).

3 Press the shutter release button.
   The shutter remains open as long as the shutter release button is kept pressed.

Caution: EV Compensation, Continuous Shooting and Exposure Bracketing are not available in Bulb shooting.
Selecting the Metering Method

Choose the part of the screen to use for measuring brightness and determining exposure. The following three methods are available.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Metering Method</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Multi-segment</td>
<td>Segments the viewfinder in 16 parts, meters each portion and determines the proper exposure. (default setting)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Center-weighted</td>
<td>Measures the entire viewfinder with an emphasis on the center and determines the exposure.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spot</td>
<td>Measures only a spot in the center of the viewfinder and determines exposure.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **Press the INFO button in the status screen.**
   
The control panel appears.

Press the **INFO** button when the status screen is not displayed.
Use the four-way controller (🔼🔽◀▶) to select [AE Metering] and press the OK button.

The [AE Metering] screen appears.

Use the four-way controller (◀▶) to select a metering method.

Press the OK button.

The camera returns to the control panel.

You can also change the setting from the [Rec. Mode 2] menu.

Using the Multi-segment Metering

The scene in the viewfinder is metered in 16 different zones as shown in the illustration when using the multi-segment metering. Even in backlit locations, this mode automatically determines what level of brightness is in which portion and automatically adjusts exposure.

Multi-segment metering method is not available when using a lens other than a DA, DA L, D FA, FA J, FA, F or A lens, or when the lens aperture ring is set to the position other than A.
Linking AE to AF Point during Multi-segment Metering

In [6. Link AE to AF Point] of the [C Custom Setting 1] menu (p.81), you can link the exposure and AF point in the focusing area during multi-segment metering.

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>Exposure is set separately from the AF point. (default setting)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>On</td>
<td>Exposure is set in accordance with the AF point.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Using the Center-Weighted Metering

Metering is weighted at the center of the viewfinder. Use this metering when you want to compensate the exposure by experience, instead of leaving it to the camera. The illustration shows that sensitivity increases as the pattern height increases (center). This mode does not automatically compensate for backlit scenes.

Using the Spot Metering

With spot metering, brightness is measured only within a limited area at the center of the viewfinder as shown in the illustration. You can use this in combination with the AE lock (p.108) when the subject is extremely small and the correct exposure is difficult to obtain.

Setting the Meter Operating Time

You can set the exposure metering time to [10 sec.] (default setting), [3 sec.] or [30 sec.] in [4. Meter Operating Time] of the [C Custom Setting 1] menu (p.81).
**Adjusting the Exposure**

This allows you to deliberately overexpose (brighten) or underexpose (darken) your picture. The exposure steps can be selected from 1/3 EV or 1/2 EV in [1. EV Steps] of the [C Custom Setting 1] menu. You can adjust the EV compensation from –3 to +3 (EV).

1. **Turn the e-dial while pressing the Av button.**
   
The exposure is adjusted.

   is displayed in the status screen and viewfinder during compensation.

   ![Av button](image)

   **Av** button

   **Av**

   

   ![Compensation value](image)

   Compensation value

- EV compensation is not available when the mode dial is set to M (Manual).
- The EV compensation is not canceled by turning the camera off or by setting any other capture mode.
- If [Green Button] is assigned to the (Green) button in [Green Button] of the [Rec. Mode 4] menu (p.179), the compensation value is reset to 0.0 when the button is pressed.
- EV compensation can also be changed by pressing the Av button once, taking your finger off the button and turning the e-dial. In this case, EV compensation is set when the Av button is pressed again or the exposure metering timer (p.106) elapses.
Changing the Exposure Steps

Set the exposure setting steps in [1. EV Steps] of the [C Custom Setting 1] menu (p.81) to increments of 1/3 EV or 1/2 EV.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step Interval</th>
<th>Exposure Setting Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1/3 EV</td>
<td>±0.3, ±0.7, ±1.0, ±1.3, ±1.7, ±2.0, ±2.3, ±2.7, ±3.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/2 EV</td>
<td>±0.5, ±1.0, ±1.5, ±2.0, ±2.5, ±3.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Locking the Exposure Before Shooting (AE Lock)

AE Lock is a function that locks the exposure prior to taking a picture. Use this when the subject is too small or is backlit and a proper exposure setting cannot be obtained.


2. **Press the AF/AE-L button.**
   
   The camera locks the exposure (brightness) at that instant.
   
   * is displayed in the status screen and viewfinder while the AE lock is engaged.
You can take three pictures continuously with different exposure when the shutter release button is pressed. The first frame is exposed with no compensation, the second frame is underexposed (negative compensation) and the third frame is overexposed (positive compensation).

Changing the Exposure Automatically when Shooting (Exposure Bracketing)

You can take three pictures continuously with different exposure when the shutter release button is pressed. The first frame is exposed with no compensation, the second frame is underexposed (negative compensation) and the third frame is overexposed (positive compensation).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>0 - +</th>
<th>Standard → Underexposed → Overexposed (default setting)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>- 0 +</td>
<td>Underexposed → Standard → Overexposed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>+ 0 -</td>
<td>Overexposed → Standard → Underexposed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>0 + -</td>
<td>Standard → Overexposed → Underexposed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **Press the four-way controller (▲) in Capture mode.**
   The [Drive Mode] screen appears.

2. **Use the four-way controller (◄ ►) to select [Exposure Bracketing].**

3. **Turn the e-dial to set the EV compensation value.**
   The following bracket values can be set according to the step interval set in [1. EV Steps] (p.108) of the [C Custom Setting 1] menu.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step Interval</th>
<th>Bracket Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1/3 EV</td>
<td>±0.3, ±0.7, ±1.0, ±1.3, ±1.7, ±2.0, ±2.3, ±2.7, ±3.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/2 EV</td>
<td>±0.5, ±1.0, ±1.5, ±2.0, ±2.5, ±3.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. **Press the OK button.**
   The camera is ready to take a picture.

5. **Press the shutter release button halfway.**
   The focus indicator • appears in the viewfinder, and EV compensation value appears in the status screen and viewfinder when focused.
6 Press the shutter release button fully.

Continue to press the shutter release button until three shots have been captured.

Three consecutive images will be taken according to the order set in [7. Auto Bracketing Order] of the [C Custom Setting 1] menu.

- Exposure Bracketing is not available in (Moving Object) of Picture mode, and (Kids) or (Pet) of SCN (Scene) mode.
- Exposure Bracketing is not available when the shutter speed is set to Bulb.
- Exposure Bracketing and Multi-exposure cannot be used at the same time. The mode set last is used.
- When [AF Mode] is set to AF.S (Single mode), the focus is locked in the first frame position and is used for subsequent frames.
- When you take your finger off the shutter release button during Exposure Bracketing, the exposure setting will remain effective for twice as much time as the exposure metering timer (default setting is approx. 20 seconds) (p.106) and you can take a picture at the next compensation value. In this case, auto focusing works for each frame. After about twice as much time as the exposure metering timer elapses, the camera returns to settings for taking the first picture.
- You can combine Exposure Bracketing with the built-in flash or an external flash (P-TTL auto only) to change only the flash output continuously. However, when using an external flash, holding the shutter release button down to take three continuous frames may cause the second and third frame to be taken before the flash is fully charged. Always take one frame at a time after confirming that charging is complete.

Taking only overexposed or underexposed pictures

You can use Exposure Bracketing mode for only underexposure or overexposure shots by combining it with EV Compensation (p.107). Exposure Bracketing is performed in both cases on the basis of the specified EV compensation value (up to ±3 EV).
You can focus with the following methods.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>AF</th>
<th>Autofocus</th>
<th>The camera automatically focuses on the subject when the shutter release button is pressed halfway.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MF</td>
<td>Manual focus</td>
<td>Manually adjust the focus.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Using the Autofocus

You can also choose the autofocus mode from **AF.S** (Single mode) where the shutter release button is pressed halfway to focus on the subject and the focus is locked at that position, **AF.C** (Continuous mode) where the subject is kept in focus by continuous adjustment while the shutter release button is pressed halfway, and **AF.A** (Auto) which automatically switches between **AF.S** and **AF.C**. The default setting is **AF.A**.

Setting the AF Mode (p.115)

1. Set the focus mode lever to **AF**.
Look through the viewfinder and press the shutter release button halfway.

The focus indicator ◾️ appears and you will hear a beep when the subject comes into focus. (When blinking, the subject is not in focus.)

Subjects that are difficult to focus on (p.65)
Using the AF/AE-L Button to Focus on the Subject

You can set the camera so that focusing is performed when the **AF/AE-L** button is pressed. Use this setting when the autofocus by pressing the shutter release button halfway is not desired.


<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Enable AF1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Enable AF2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Cancel AF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>AE Lock</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Press the **AF/AE-L** button.

Auto focusing is performed.
## Setting the AF Mode

You can choose from the following three autofocus modes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mode</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>AF.A</strong>&lt;br&gt;Auto</td>
<td>Switches automatically between <strong>AF.S</strong> and <strong>AF.C</strong> modes according to the subject. (default setting)&lt;br&gt;• [AF Mode] is fixed to <strong>AF.A</strong> in <strong>Auto</strong> (Auto Picture) mode.&lt;br&gt;• Even if <strong>AF.A</strong> is selected, [AF Mode] is fixed to <strong>AF.S</strong> when shooting with Live View with the mode dial set to <strong>P</strong>, <strong>Sv</strong>, <strong>Tv</strong>, <strong>Av</strong> or <strong>M</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>AF.S</strong>&lt;br&gt;Single mode</td>
<td>When the shutter release button is pressed halfway to focus on the subject, the focus is locked at that position.&lt;br&gt;• The focus is locked while the focus indicator ✸ appears in the viewfinder. To focus on another subject, take your finger off the shutter release button first, then press the shutter release button halfway again.&lt;br&gt;• The shutter cannot be released until the subject is in focus. If the subject is too close to the camera, move back and take the picture. Adjust the focus manually if it is difficult to focus on the subject (p.65). (p.121)&lt;br&gt;• When the shutter release button is pressed halfway, the built-in flash will discharge automatically several times, making it easier to focus on the subject if the subject is in a dark area and the built-in flash is available.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>AF.C</strong>&lt;br&gt;Continuous mode</td>
<td>The subject is kept in focus by continuous adjustment while the shutter release button is pressed halfway. Even if the subject is not in focus, the shutter can be released when the shutter release button is pressed fully.&lt;br&gt;• Available only when the mode dial is set to <strong>P</strong>, <strong>Sv</strong>, <strong>Tv</strong>, <strong>Av</strong> or <strong>M</strong>.&lt;br&gt;• [AF Mode] is fixed to <strong>AF.C</strong> in <strong>M</strong> (Moving Object) of Picture mode and <strong>K</strong> (Stage Lighting), <strong>S</strong> (Kids), <strong>B</strong> (Pet) and <strong>N</strong> (Night Snap) of <strong>SCN</strong> (Scene) mode.&lt;br&gt;• When the shutter release button is pressed halfway or the <strong>AF/AE-L</strong> button is used to adjust the focus, the camera automatically tracks the subject if it is determined to be a moving object.&lt;br&gt;• The built-in flash will not discharge multiple times.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1 Set the focus mode lever to AF.

2 Press the INFO button in the status screen.
The control panel appears.
Press the INFO button when the status screen is not displayed.

3 Use the four-way controller (▲▼◄►) to select [AF Mode] and press the OK button.
The [AF Mode] screen appears.

4 Use the four-way controller (◄►) to select an AF mode.

5 Press the OK button.
The camera returns to the control panel.

- You can also change the setting from the [Rec. Mode 2] menu (p.79).
- [AF Mode] cannot be changed in Picture mode and SCN (Scene) mode.
- Always set the camera to AF.S when using the Quick-Shift Focus System on a DA lens.
Selecting the Focusing Area (AF Point)

Choose the part of the viewfinder to set focus to.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Auto (5 AF Points)</th>
<th>Out of the 5 AF points, the camera selects the optimum AF point even if the subject is not centered. (default setting)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Auto (11 AF Points)</td>
<td>Out of the 11 AF points, the camera selects the optimum AF point even if the subject is not centered.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Select</td>
<td>Sets the focusing area to the user selected point from eleven points in the AF area.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spot</td>
<td>Sets the focusing area to the center of the viewfinder.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **Press the OK button in Capture mode.**
   The [Select AF Point] screen appears.

2. **Turn the e-dial to select the AF point.**

3. **Press the OK button.**
   The camera is ready to take a picture.

**memo**
- The focusing area can also be set in the control panel.
- The AF point is fixed to ○ regardless of this setting when using lenses other than DA, DA L, D FA, FA J, FA or F lenses.
Setting the Focus Position in the AF Frame

1. **Set the AF point to ** and press the four-way controller (▼).

2. **Use the four-way controller (▲▼◀▶) to change the AF point.**

3. **Press the OK button.**
   The camera is ready to take a picture.

   The selected AF point appears in the status screen.
**Locking the Focus (Focus Lock)**

If the subject is outside the range of the focusing area, the camera cannot automatically focus on the subject. In this situation, set [AF Mode] to **AF.S** (Single mode). You can aim the focusing area toward the subject, use the focus lock and recompose the picture.

1. **Set [AF Mode] to AF.S.**
   
   Refer to p.115.

2. **Frame the desired composition for your picture in the viewfinder.**

   Example) The person is out of focus and the background is focused instead.

3. **Center the subject to focus in the viewfinder and press the shutter release button halfway.**

   The focus indicator $\bullet$ appears and you will hear a beep when the subject comes into focus. (When blinking, the subject is not in focus.)
4 Lock the focus.
Keep the shutter release button pressed halfway. The focus will remain locked.

5 Recompose the picture while keeping the shutter release button pressed halfway.

- The focus is locked while the focus indicator ■ is displayed.
- Turning the zoom ring with the focus locked may cause the subject to be out of focus.
- The beep that sounds when the image is focused can be turned off. (p.243)
- You cannot set the focus lock when [AF Mode] is set to AF.C (Continuous mode), the Picture mode is set to (Moving Object) or SCN (Scene) mode is set to (Stage Lighting), (Kids), (Pet) or (Night Snap). In such cases, the autofocus continues to focus on the subject until the shutter is released (Continuous Autofocus).

### Locking Exposure when the Focus is Locked

Set [5. AE-L with AF Locked] in the [ Custom Setting 1] menu (p.81) to lock the exposure value while the focus is locked. By default, the exposure is not locked when the focus is locked.

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>On</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Adjusting the Focus Manually (Manual Focus)

When you adjust the focus manually, you can use either the focus indicator or the matte field in the viewfinder.

Using the Focus Indicator

The focus indicator ✈ appears in the viewfinder when the subject is in focus even during manual focus.
You can manually adjust the focus using the focus indicator ✈.

1. Set the focus mode lever to **MF**.

2. Look through the viewfinder, press the shutter release button halfway and turn the focusing ring.

The focus indicator ✈ appears and you will hear a beep when the subject comes into focus.
Using the Viewfinder Matte Field

You can manually adjust the focus using the matte field in viewfinder.

1. **Set the focus mode lever to MF.**

2. **Look through the viewfinder and turn the focusing ring until the subject is clearly visible on the focusing screen.**
Shooting in Catch-in Focus Mode

When [21. Catch-in Focus] in the [C Custom Setting 3] menu (p.82) is set to [On], if [AF Mode] is set to AF.A or AF.S and one of the following types of lenses is attached, catch-in focus shooting is enabled and the shutter is released automatically when the subject comes into focus.

• Manual focus lens
• DA or FA lens that has an AF and MF setting on the lens (the setting on the lens must be set to MF before shooting)

● How to Take Pictures
   1 Attach a proper lens to the camera.
   2 Set the focus mode lever to AF.
   3 Set [AF Mode] to AF.A or AF.S.
   4 Set the focus on a position the subject will pass.
   5 Press the shutter release button fully.
      The shutter is released automatically when the subject comes into focus in the set position.
Checking the Composition, Exposure and Focus Before Shooting (Preview)

You can use the preview function to check depth of field, composition, exposure and focus before taking a picture. There are two preview methods.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Preview Method</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Optical Preview</td>
<td>For checking the depth of field with the viewfinder.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Digital Preview</td>
<td>For checking the composition, exposure and focus on the monitor.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You can also use the Live View function to display a real-time image on the monitor and change the shooting function settings during display and check the settings by enlarging the image. Refer to p.143 for details.

Assigning the Preview Function to the Green Button

First, assign the Preview function to the (Green) button.


2. **Press the four-way controller (▲).**
Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Optical Preview] or [Digital Preview] and press the OK button. If you selected [Optical Preview], proceed to Step 6.

Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Histogram] or [Bright/Dark Area].

Use the four-way controller (◄►) to select ☑ or ☐.

Press the MENU button twice.

The Preview function is assigned to the ○ button and the camera is ready to take a picture.

While shooting with Multi-exposure or Live View, Optical Preview is used regardless of the setting.
Displaying the Optical Preview

1 Position the subject inside the AF frame and press the shutter release button halfway to focus on the subject.

2 Press the button while looking through the viewfinder.
   You can check the depth of field in the viewfinder while the button is pressed.
   During this time, no shooting information is displayed in the viewfinder, and the shutter cannot be released.

3 Take your finger off the button.
   Optical Preview is ended and the camera is ready to take a picture.
Displaying the Digital Preview

1  **Focus on the subject, then compose the picture in the viewfinder and press the \( \text{○} \) button.**

The icon (\( \text{○} \)) appears on the monitor during preview and you can check the composition, exposure and focus.

### Available operations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operation</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>e-dial</td>
<td>Enlarges the preview image. (p.202)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INFO button</td>
<td>Saves the preview image. Select [Save as] and press the ( \text{OK} ) button.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2  **Press the shutter release button halfway.**

Digital Preview is ended and the autofocus system operates.

\( \text{memo} \)
The maximum display time for Digital Preview is 60 seconds.
Using Shake Reduction Function to Prevent Camera Shake

Taking Pictures Using the Shake Reduction Function

The Shake Reduction function reduces camera shake that occurs when the shutter release button is pressed. This is useful for taking pictures in situations where camera shake is likely to occur. The Shake Reduction function allows you to take pictures at approximately 4 steps slower shutter speed without the risk of camera shake.

The Shake Reduction function is ideal when taking pictures in the following situations.

- When taking pictures in dimly lit locations, such as indoors, at night, on cloudy days and in the shade
- When taking telephoto pictures

![Blurred picture](image1.png)  ![Picture taken with the Shake Reduction function](image2.png)

**Caution**

- The Shake Reduction function does not compensate for blurring caused by subject movement. To take pictures of a moving subject, increase the shutter speed.
- The Shake Reduction function may not fully reduce camera shake when taking close-up shots. In this case, it is recommended that the Shake Reduction function be turned off and the camera be used with a tripod.
- The Shake Reduction function will not fully work when shooting with a very slow shutter speed, for example when panning or shooting night scenes. In this case, it is recommended that the Shake Reduction function be turned off and the camera be used with a tripod.
Setting the Shake Reduction Function

1 Press the INFO button in the status screen.
The control panel appears.
Press the INFO button when the status screen is not displayed.

2 Use the four-way controller (▲▼◄►) to select [Shake Reduction] and press the OK button.
The [Shake Reduction] screen appears.

3 Use the four-way controller (◄►) to select (On) or (Off).
   (On): Uses Shake Reduction. (default setting)
   (Off): Does not use Shake Reduction.

4 Press the OK button.
The camera returns to the control panel.

5 Press the shutter release button halfway.
   (On) appears in the viewfinder and the Shake Reduction function is activated.

- Be sure to turn the Shake Reduction function off when using the camera with a tripod.
- The Shake Reduction function automatically turns off in the following situations.
  - Self-timer
  - Remote control shooting
  - Bulb shooting
  - HDR Capture
  - Using the external flash in the wireless mode
Shooting Functions

The Shake Reduction function operates by obtaining the lens information such as focal length. If the camera uses a DA, DA L, D FA, FA J, FA or F lens, the lens information is automatically obtained when the Shake Reduction function is activated.

The [Input Focal Length] setting screen appears when the camera is turned on with the Shake Reduction function set to and a type of lens that does not support automatic obtaining the lens information such as focal length (p.282) is mounted.

Set the focal length manually in the [Input Focal Length] setting screen.

1. Use the four-way controller ( or the e-dial to set the focal length.

Select from the following 34 focal length values. (The default setting is 35 mm.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>8</th>
<th>10</th>
<th>12</th>
<th>15</th>
<th>18</th>
<th>20</th>
<th>24</th>
<th>28</th>
<th>30</th>
<th>35</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>55</td>
<td>65</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>85</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>135</td>
<td>150</td>
<td>180</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>250</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>350</td>
<td>400</td>
<td>450</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>550</td>
<td>600</td>
<td>700</td>
<td>800</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- You can also change the setting from the [Rec. Mode] menu (p.80).
- The Shake Reduction function will not fully work (for about 2 seconds) right after turning on the camera or restoring from Auto Power Off. Wait for the Shake Reduction function to become stable before gently pressing the shutter release button to take a picture. Press the shutter release button halfway. The camera is ready to take a picture when appears in the viewfinder.
- The Shake Reduction function is available with any compatible PENTAX lens. However, when the aperture ring is set to other than the (Auto) position or a lens without an A position is used, the camera will not operate unless [22. Using Aperture Ring] is set to [Permitted] in the [Custom Setting 4] menu. Set this beforehand. However, in such cases some functions will be restricted. Refer to “Notes on [22. Using Aperture Ring]” (p.284) for details.

When the Focal Length Cannot Be Automatically Detected

The Shake Reduction function operates by obtaining the lens information such as focal length.

If the camera uses a DA, DA L, D FA, FA J, FA or F lens, the lens information is automatically obtained when the Shake Reduction function is activated.

The [Input Focal Length] setting screen appears when the camera is turned on with the Shake Reduction function set to and a type of lens that does not support automatic obtaining the lens information such as focal length (p.282) is mounted.

Set the focal length manually in the [Input Focal Length] setting screen.

- The [Input Focal Length] setting screen does not appear when using a lens that supports automatic obtaining the lens information such as focal length.
- When using a lens without the A position on the aperture or with the aperture set to a position other than the A position, set [22. Using Aperture Ring] in the [Custom Setting 4] menu to [Permitted]. (p.284)
• If the focal length for your lens is not listed above, select the value closest to the actual focal length (example: [18] for 17 mm and [100] for 105 mm).
• When using a zoom lens, select the actual focal length at the zoom setting being used in the same manner.

2 **Press the OK button.**

The camera is ready to take a picture.

• To change the focal length setting, use [Input Focal Length] in the [Rec. Mode 4] menu (p.80).
• The effect of Shake Reduction is influenced by the shooting distance as well as focal length information. The Shake Reduction function may not work as effectively as expected when shooting at close ranges.

---

### Shooting with the Self-timer

This camera has the following two types of self-timers.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Self-timer</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>![Self-timer](12 sec.)</td>
<td>Shutter will be released after about 12 seconds. Use this mode to include the photographer in the picture.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![Self-timer](2 sec.)</td>
<td>A mirror pops up immediately after shutter release button is pressed. The shutter is released after about 2 seconds. Use this mode to avoid camera shake when the shutter release button is pressed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 **Mount the camera onto a tripod.**

2 **Press the four-way controller (▲) in Capture mode.**

The [Drive Mode] screen appears.
3 Use the four-way controller ( ◄ ► ) to select ○.

4 Press the four-way controller ( ◄ ◄ ◄ ) and use the four-way controller ( ◄ ► ) to select ○.

5 Press the OK button.
The camera is ready to take a picture.

6 Press the shutter release button halfway.
The autofocus system operates. The focus indicator ● appears in the viewfinder when the subject is in focus.

7 Press the shutter release button fully.
The front self-timer lamp starts blinking slowly and then blinks rapidly 2 seconds before the shutter is released. The beep is heard and the rate increases for the last 2 seconds. The shutter will be released about 12 seconds after the shutter release button is pressed fully.
Using the Mirror Lock-up Function

Use the Mirror Lock-up function if camera shake is evident even when a remote control unit (optional) is used with a tripod. When shooting with the 2 sec. self-timer, the mirror pops up and the shutter is released 2 seconds after you press the shutter release button, thereby avoiding the vibration of the mirror.

Follow the procedure below to take a picture with the Mirror Lock-up function.

1. Mount the camera onto a tripod.
2. Select 📸 in the drive mode.
   Refer to Steps 1 to 5 on p.131 for details.
3. Press the shutter release button halfway.
   The autofocus system operates. The focus indicator 📸 appears in the viewfinder when focused.
4. Press the shutter release button fully.
   A picture is taken 2 seconds after the mirror pops up. The AE lock function is enabled with the exposure value set immediately before the mirror pops up.

- The self-timer shooting is not available in 🏞️ (Moving Object) of Picture mode, and 🤖 (Kids) or 🐾 (Pet) of SCN (Scene) mode.
- Select a mode other than ⏳ or ⏳ in the [Drive Mode] screen to cancel the self-timer shooting. The setting is canceled when the camera is turned off if [Drive Mode] is set to ⏰ (Off) in [Memory] (p.260) of the [📷 Rec. Mode 4] menu.
- The Shake Reduction function is automatically turned off when ⏳ or ⏳ is set.
- You can set the camera so that the beep does not sound. (p.243)
- The exposure may be affected if the light enters the viewfinder. Use the AE lock function (p.108). The light entering the viewfinder has no effect on the exposure when the mode dial is set to M (Manual) (p.100).
Shooting with the Remote Control (Optional)

The shutter can be released from a distance by using the optional remote control unit. You can select from the following two settings for remote control shooting.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Remote Control</td>
<td>The shutter will be released immediately after the shutter release button on the remote control unit is pressed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remote Control (3s delay)</td>
<td>The shutter is released about 3 seconds after the shutter release button on the remote control unit is pressed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Mount the camera onto a tripod.

2. Press the four-way controller (▲) in Capture mode.
   The [Drive Mode] screen appears.

3. Use the four-way controller (◄►) to select i.

4. Press the four-way controller (▼) and use the four-way controller (◄►) to select i or i₃₅.
   The self-timer lamp will blink to let you know that the camera is in remote control stand-by status.

5. Press the OK button.
   The camera is ready to take a picture.
6 Press the shutter release button halfway.
The autofocus system operates. The focus indicator ☑ appears in the viewfinder when focused.

7 Point the remote control unit towards the remote control receiver on the front of the camera and press the shutter release button on the remote control unit.

The operating distance of the remote control unit is about 4 m from the front of the camera.

After the picture is taken, the self-timer lamp lights for 2 seconds and then returns to blinking.

- The remote control shooting is not available in  ◎ (Moving Object) of Picture mode, and ◯ (Kids) or ◦ (Pet) of SCN (Scene) mode.
- By default, you cannot adjust the focus with the remote control unit. Focus on the subject first with the camera before operating with the remote control. When [11. AF with Remote Control] is set to [On] in the [C Custom Setting 2] menu (p.81), you can use the remote control unit to adjust the focus.
- When using the remote control unit, the built-in flash does not pop up automatically even when set to ◎ (Auto Flash Discharge). Press the $UP/ button to pop up the built-in flash beforehand. (p.70)
- The exposure may be affected if the light enters the viewfinder. Use the AE lock function (p.108). The light entering the viewfinder has no effect on the exposure when the mode dial is set to M (Manual) (p.100).
- Select a mode other than ◯ or ◦ in the [Drive Mode] screen to cancel the remote control shooting. The setting is canceled when the camera is turned off if [Drive Mode] is set to □ (Off) in [Memory] (p.260) of the [Rec. Mode 4] menu.
- The Shake Reduction function is automatically turned off when ◯ or ◦ is set.
- The remote control may not operate in backlit conditions.
- The remote control unit battery can send a remote control signal about 30,000 times. Contact PENTAX Service Center to replace the battery (this will involve a fee).
Continuous Shooting

Pictures can be taken continuously while the shutter release button is kept pressed. The following two types of continuous shooting are available.

| Continuous Shooting (Hi) | When JPEG image quality is set to \(12M/★★★\), up to 17 frames are taken continuously at approximately 4.7 fps. The shooting interval will increase as the camera buffer memory fills up. |
| Continuous Shooting (Lo) | When JPEG image quality is set to \(12M/★★★\), pictures are taken continuously at approximately 2 fps until the SD Memory Card is full. |

When the file format is [RAW], up to 5 frames for ✂ or up to 11 frames for ✂ can be taken continuously.

1. **Press the four-way controller (▲) in Capture mode.**
   The [Drive Mode] screen appears.

2. **Use the four-way controller (◀▶) to select ✂.**

3. **Press the four-way controller (▼) and use the four-way controller (◀▶) to select ✂ or ✂.**
4 Press the **OK** button.
The camera is ready to take pictures continuously.

5 **Press the shutter release button halfway.**
The autofocus system operates. The focus indicator appears in the viewfinder when focused.

6 **Press the shutter release button fully.**
Pictures are taken continuously while the shutter release button is fully pressed. Take your finger off the shutter release button to stop.

**memo**
- The drive mode is fixed to \( \equiv \) in (Moving Object) of Picture mode, and (Kids) or (Pet) of SCN (Scene) mode.
- If [AF Mode] is set to AF.S (Single mode), the focus position is locked on the first frame and pictures are taken continuously at the same interval.
- Focusing is continuously activated during continuous shooting when [AF Mode] is set to AF.C (Continuous mode).
- The shutter cannot be released until charging is complete when using the built-in flash. You can set the camera to enable shutter release before the built-in flash is ready in [16. Release While Charging] of the [C Custom Setting 3] menu. (p.73)
- Select a mode other than \( \equiv \) or \( \equiv \) in the [Drive Mode] screen to cancel the continuous shooting. The setting is canceled when the camera is turned off if [Drive Mode] is set to \( \square \) (Off) in [Memory] (p.260) of the [Rec. Mode 4] menu.
- The shooting speed may be slower when [Distortion Correction] or [Lat-Chromatic-Ab Adj] (p.192) is set to [On].
Multi-exposure

You can create a composite picture while taking multiple frames.

Multi-exposure is not available when the mode dial is set to 🎥 (Movie), or when Cross Processing, Digital Filter or HDR Capture is set.


2 Use the four-way controller (▲ ▼) to select [Number of Shots].

3 Press the four-way controller (►) and use the four-way controller (▲ ▼) to select the number of shots. Select from 2 to 9 shots.

4 Press the OK button.

5 Use the four-way controller (▲ ▼) to select [Auto EV Adjustment] and use the four-way controller (◄ ►) to select ✔ or □.

When set to ✔, the exposure is adjusted automatically according to the number of shots.

6 Use the four-way controller (▲ ▼) to select [Start Shooting] and press the OK button.

The camera returns to Capture mode.
Take the picture.

The composite picture is displayed in Instant Review each time the shutter release button is pressed. Press the $UP$/ button during Instant Review to discard pictures taken up to that point and take pictures again from the first frame.

The pictures are saved when the set number of shots has been taken, and then the [Multi-exposure] screen appears again.

---

- **Caution**
  - Multi-exposure and Exposure Bracketing cannot be used at the same time. The mode set last is used.
  - [Distortion Correction] and [Lat-Chromatic-Ab Adj] (p.192) are disabled when Multi-exposure is set.

- **Memo**
  - If any of the following operations are performed while shooting, the pictures that have been already taken are saved and Multi-exposure is exited.
    - The ‡ button, **MENU** button, four-way controller (▲▼◄►) or **INFO** button is pressed
    - The mode dial is turned
    - Exposure Bracketing is set
  - When shooting in Multi-exposure mode using Live View, a semi-transparent composite image of the pictures taken is displayed.

---

Shooting Functions
You can apply a filter when taking pictures. The following filters can be selected.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Filter Name</th>
<th>Effect</th>
<th>Parameter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Toy Camera</td>
<td>For taking pictures that look as if taken with a toy camera.</td>
<td>Shading Level: +1/+2/+3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Blur: +1/+2/+3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Tone Break: Red/Green/Blue/Yellow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Retro</td>
<td>For taking pictures with the look of old photos.</td>
<td>Toning: -3 to +3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Frame Composite: None/Thin/Medium/Thick</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High Contrast</td>
<td>For taking pictures with high contrasts.</td>
<td>+1 to +5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Extract Color</td>
<td>For extracting a specific color and making the rest of the image black and white.</td>
<td>Color: Red/Magenta/Blue/Cyan/Green/Yellow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Color Freq. Range: -2 to +2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soft</td>
<td>For taking pictures with a soft focus throughout the image.</td>
<td>Soft Focus: +1/+2/+3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Shadow Blur: OFF/ON</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Star Burst</td>
<td>For taking pictures of night scenes or lights reflected on water with a special sparkling look achieved by adding cross-like effects to the picture's highlights.</td>
<td>Effect Density: Small/Medium/Large</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Size: Short/Medium/Long</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Angle: 0°/30°/45°/60°</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fish-eye</td>
<td>For taking pictures that look as if taken with a fish-eye lens.</td>
<td>Weak/Medium/Strong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Custom Filter</td>
<td>Customize and save a filter to your own preferences.</td>
<td>High Contrast: OFF/+1 to +5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Soft Focus: OFF/+1/+2/+3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Tone Break: OFF/Red/Green/Blue/Yellow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Shading Type: 6 types</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Shading Level: -3 to +3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Distortion Type: 3 types</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Distortion Level: OFF/Weak/Medium/Strong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Invert Color: OFF/ON</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1 Press the INFO button in the status screen.
The control panel appears.
Press the INFO button when the status screen is not displayed.

2 Use the four-way controller (▲▼◄►) to select [Digital Filter] and press the OK button.
The screen for selecting the filter appears.

3 Use the four-way controller (◄►) to select a filter.

- When Digital Filter is set, the file format is always set to [JPEG] and cannot be changed. You cannot use Digital Filter when the file format is set to [RAW] or [RAW+].
- When Digital Filter is set, Multi-exposure is not available.
- Digital Filter and HDR Capture cannot be used at the same time. The mode set last is used.

Depending on the filter used, it may take longer to save images.
4 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select the parameter and the four-way controller (◄►) to adjust the parameter’s value.

Available operations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Button</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Av</td>
<td>You can use Digital Preview to preview the background image with the selected filter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INFO</td>
<td>Saves the background image. Select [Save as] and press the OK button.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5 Press the OK button.

The camera returns to the control panel.

- You can also change the settings from the [Rec. Mode 2] menu (p.79).
- Select [Not use any filters] in Step 3 to finish shooting with digital filter.
- You can also apply digital filter effects to images after shooting them in Playback mode (p.227).
You can shoot a picture or a movie while displaying the real-time image on the monitor.

**Caution:**
- The image in Live View may differ from the captured image if the brightness of the subject is low or high.
- If any changes occur in the shooting light source during Live View, the image may flicker.
- If the camera position is changed rapidly during Live View, the image may not be displayed with the appropriate brightness. Wait for the display to become stable before shooting.
- Noise may appear on the Live View image when used in dark locations.
- If you continue shooting with the Live View for a prolonged period, the internal temperature of the camera may increase, resulting in lower quality images. It is recommended that you turn off Live View when not shooting. To prevent the image quality from degrading, allow enough time for the camera to cool down while shooting with long exposures or recording movies.
- If the internal temperature of the camera is high, (temperature warning) will appear on the monitor and Live View may not be available.
- If Live View is used in places where the camera may become hot, such as in direct sunlight, (temperature warning) may appear on the monitor. Cancel Live View, as the internal temperature of the camera is rising.
- Live View can be displayed for up to 5 minutes. However, if Live View is used even after (temperature warning) appears, Live View may end before 5 minutes elapse. Shooting with the viewfinder is available even if Live View is ended.
- The higher the sensitivity, the more noise and color unevenness may occur in the Live View image and/or captured image.

**memo:**
- Shooting while holding the camera by hand and viewing the monitor can cause camera shake. Use of a tripod is recommended.
- Live View is not displayed when data is being saved to an SD Memory Card.
Taking Still Pictures

Setting the Live View

You can set the display items and autofocus mode for Live View.

   The [Live View] screen appears.

2 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Info Overlay], [Show Grid], [Histogram] or [Bright/Dark Area].

3 Use the four-way controller (◄►) to select ✔ or □.

4 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Autofocus Mode] and press the four-way controller (►).

5 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select an autofocus mode.
Shooting Functions

6 Press the OK button.

7 Press the MENU button twice.
The screen that was displayed before selecting the menu appears again.

- It takes more time to focus on the subject when using \( \mathcal{E} \) or \( \mathcal{O} \) than when using \( \mathcal{S} \). It is also difficult for the camera to focus on the following objects (or under the following conditions).
  - Objects with poor contrast
  - Objects with no vertical contrast, such as horizontal stripes
  - Objects with constantly changing brightness, shape, or color, such as a water fountain
  - Objects whose distance from the camera changes
  - Small objects
  - Objects appearing in both the foreground and background
  - When using a special filter
  - Objects at the edge of the screen
- If the shutter release button is pressed halfway during Live View when [Autofocus Mode] is set to \( \mathcal{S} \) (Phase Difference AF), the Live View image will disappear and the autofocus system operates. Once focused, the Live View image will be displayed again.
- The face detection is not performed when the focus mode is set to MF (except when in \( \text{AUTO PICT} \) (Auto Picture)).
- When [AF Mode] is set to \( \text{AF.C} \) (Continuous mode), the built-in flash will not discharge multiple times.

| \( \mathcal{E} \) | Face Detection AF | Gives autofocus priority to detected faces and performs contrast autofocus. A yellow frame appears for the main face (white frames appear for other faces), and autofocus and automatic exposure are performed for the main face. (default setting) |
| \( \mathcal{O} \) | Contrast AF | Displays Live View and performs autofocus based on the information obtained from the image sensor. |
| \( \mathcal{I} \) | Phase Difference AF | Cancels Live View and performs autofocus with the AF sensor. |
1 Select a Capture mode.
Set the mode dial to any mode other than \( \text{C} \).

2 Press the \( \text{LV} \) button.

The mirror pops up and a real-time image is displayed on the monitor. Press the \( \text{LV} \) button again to exit Live View.

Live View can be displayed for up to 5 minutes. When the Live View display is cancelled after the elapse of 5 minutes, Live View can be restarted by pressing the \( \text{LV} \) button. If the internal temperature of the camera is high, Live View ends before 5 minutes elapse.

Live View display
(All of the indicators are displayed here for explanatory purposes.)
1 Capture Mode
2 Flash Mode
3 Drive Mode
4 White Balance
5 Custom Image
6 Multi-exposure/Digital Filter/HDR Capture/Cross Processing
7 Number of shots using Multi-exposure
8 Battery level
9 Temperature warning
10 Change AF point
11 Contrast AF frame
12 Phase Difference AF frame/AF point
13 EV Compensation
14 Histogram
15 AE lock
16 Shutter speed
17 Aperture value
18 EV bar
19 Sensitivity
20 Remaining image storage capacity
21 Main face detection frame (Face Detection AF)
22 Face detection frame (Face Detection AF)

* Indicator 12 (Phase Difference AF frame) is displayed in white during Live View. When the subject is in focus, a green square frame is displayed instead. It turns red when the subject is not in focus. It is not displayed when the focus mode is set to MF.

* Indicators 21 and 22 are displayed when [Autofocus Mode] is set to 😂 and the camera detects person’s face(s). (Up to 16 face recognition frames are displayed on the monitor.)

### Available operations

**INFO button** Enlarges the image to 2, 4, 6 times (when the focus mode is set to MF, enlarges the image to 2, 4, 6, 8, 10 times). Use the four-way controller (▲▼◄►) to move the display area, and press the (Green) button to return the display area to the center. (Available only when [Green Button] is assigned to the (Green) button in [Green Button] of the [Rec. Mode 4] menu (p.179).)

---

3 **Position the subject on the monitor and press the shutter release button halfway.**

The autofocus system operates.

When the focus mode is set to MF, turn the focusing ring until the subject is clearly visible on the focusing screen.

4 **Press the shutter release button fully.**

The picture is taken.
You can record movies with a frame rate (number of frames shot per second) at 24 frames per second (fps), monaural audio, and the file format set to AVI.


2. Press the four-way controller (▲) and use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select the number of recorded pixels.

- When [AF Mode] is set to AF.S and [Autofocus Mode] is set to [ ] or [ ], press the OK button and use the four-way controller (▲▼◄►) to change the AF point. Press the OK button again to cancel the changing of the AF point. When [Autofocus Mode] is set to (Phase Difference AF) and [Select AF Point] is set to (Select), the AF point can be changed.
- When [AF Mode] is set to AF.C and [Autofocus Mode] is set to [ ] or [ ], the camera focuses on the center of the screen when auto focusing starts and then automatically tracks the subject when it is in focus.
- Images captured in magnified display are recorded at normal size.
- If [Optical Preview] or [Digital Preview] is assigned to the (Green) button in [Green Button] of the [Rec. Mode 4] menu, you can check the depth of field on the monitor when you press the (Green) button. (p.124)

The status screen and control panel cannot be displayed during Live View. To change the settings, press the MENU button and change them in each menu.
3. Press the OK button.

4. Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Quality Level].

5. Press the four-way controller (►) and use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select the quality level.
   Select from ★★★ (Best; default setting), ★★ (Better) and ★ (Good).
   When the recorded pixels and quality level are changed, the amount of recordable time at that setting appears at the top right of the screen.

6. Press the OK button.

7. Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Sound].

8. Use the four-way controller (◄►) to select [ ] or [ ].
   [ ] : Records sound. (default setting)
   [ ] : Does not record sound.

9. Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Movie Aperture Control].

10. Press the four-way controller (►) and use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Auto] or [Fixed].
    Auto: The aperture is controlled automatically. (The aperture value is fixed while recording a movie.)
    Fixed: The movie is recorded at the aperture value set before movie recording starts. (default setting)

11. Press the OK button.

12. Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Shake Reduction].
13 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select (►) or (▼).
   (►): Uses Shake Reduction.
   (▼): Does not use Shake Reduction. (default setting)

14 Press the MENU button twice.
   The camera is ready to record a movie.

Recording Movies

1 Set the mode dial to  

Live View for movie recording is displayed.

Live View can be displayed for up to 5 minutes. When the Live View display is cancelled after the elapse of 5 minutes, Live View can be restarted by pressing the LV button. If the internal temperature of the camera is high, Live View ends before 5 minutes elapse.

2 Position the subject on the monitor and press the shutter release button halfway.
   The autofocus system operates.
   When the focus mode is set to MF, turn the focusing ring until the subject is clearly visible on the focusing screen.
3 When [Movie Aperture Control] is set to [Fixed] (p.149), set the aperture using the e-dial.

4 Press the shutter release button fully.
Recording of the movie starts.

5 Press the shutter release button again.
Recording stops.

- When [Sound] is set to ♬, the camera operation sounds are also recorded. When recording a movie, mount the camera onto a tripod and do not operate the camera while recording.
- When recording a movie, regardless of the AF mode setting, recording starts when the shutter release button is pressed fully even if the subject is not in focus.
- While recording a movie, the autofocus system does not operate.
- The flash is not available.

• You can record movies continuously up to 4 GB or 25 minutes. When the SD Memory Card is full, recording stops and the movie is saved.
• If you intend to shoot continuously for a long period, use of the AC adapter kit K-AC84 (optional) is recommended. (p.42)
• You can also use the optional remote control to control recording operations. (p.134)
• When recording movies, only the White Balance and Custom Image (other than Fine Sharpness) settings can be used.
• The sensitivity is fixed to [AUTO].
• If a high temperature is reached inside the camera during movie recording, the recording may be terminated to protect the camera circuitry.
Playing Back Movies

Recorded movies can be played back in Playback mode in the same manner as saved images.

1 Press the \( \rightarrow \) button.

2 Use the four-way controller (\( \leftarrow \rightarrow \)) to choose a movie to play back.
   The first frame of the movie is displayed on the monitor.

3 Press the four-way controller (\( \uparrow \)).
   Movie playback starts.

Available operations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Four-way controller (( \uparrow ))</th>
<th>Pause/Resume playback</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>e-dial</td>
<td>Volume control (6 levels)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Four-way controller (( \rightarrow ))</td>
<td>Frame advance (when paused)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Press and hold four-way controller (( \rightarrow ))</td>
<td>Fast forward playback while pressed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Four-way controller (( \downarrow ))</td>
<td>Reverse playback/Frame reverse (when paused)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Press and hold four-way controller (( \downarrow ))</td>
<td>Fast reverse playback while pressed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Four-way controller (( \uparrow ))</td>
<td>Stop</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When the movie ends, playback stops and the first frame is displayed.

You can use the optional AV cable (I-AVC7) to play back recorded movies on a TV screen or other AV devices. (p.221)
Capturing a Still Picture from a Movie

You can capture a single frame from a movie recorded with the *K-X* and save it as a JPEG still picture.

1. **Pause the movie in Step 3 of “Playing Back Movies” to display the frame to save as a still picture.**

2. **Press the INFO button.**
   The save confirmation screen appears.

3. **Use the four-way controller (▲ ▼) to select [Save as].**

4. **Press the OK button.**
   The captured image is saved as a new image.
Memo
5 Using the Flash

This chapter provides details on the built-in flash of the K-x and describes how to take pictures with an external flash.

Flash Characteristics in Each Exposure Mode ............................................................ 156
Distance and Aperture when Using the Built-in Flash ................................................. 160
Lens Compatibility with the Built-in Flash ................................................................. 161
Using an External Flash (Optional) ................................................................. 162
Flash Characteristics in Each Exposure Mode

Using the Flash in Tv (Shutter Priority) Mode

- When taking a moving subject, you can use the flash to change the blur effect.
- Any desired shutter speed of 1/180 sec. or slower can be set for taking a flash photograph.
- The aperture value automatically changes according to the ambient brightness.
- The shutter speed is locked at 1/180 sec. when a lens other than a DA, DA L, D FA, FA J, FA, F or A lens is used.

Using the Flash in Av (Aperture Priority) Mode

- You can set the desired aperture value to take a flash photograph when you want to change the depth of field or shoot a subject farther away.
- The shutter speed automatically changes with the ambient brightness.
- The shutter speed shifts automatically anywhere from 1/180 sec. to a slow shutter speed (p.60) that reduces camera shake. The slowest shutter speed depends on the focal length of the lens in use.
- The shutter speed is locked at 1/180 sec. when a lens other than a DA, DA L, D FA, FA J, FA or F lens is used.

Using the Slow-speed Sync

You can use Slow-speed Sync in 🌅 (Night Scene Portrait) of Picture mode or Tv (Shutter Priority) mode when shooting portraits with the sunset in the background. Both the portrait and the background are captured beautifully.

- Slow-speed Sync slows the shutter speed. Use the Shake Reduction function or turn off the Shake Reduction function and use a tripod to avoid camera shake. The picture will also blur if the subject moves.
- Slow-speed Sync shooting can also be performed with an external flash.
Using Tv Mode

1. Set the mode dial to Tv.

2. Use the e-dial to set the shutter speed.
   The background is not properly exposed if the aperture value is blinking when the shutter speed is set. Adjust the shutter speed so that the aperture value does not blink.

3. Press the UP/DOWN button.
   The built-in flash pops up.

4. Take a picture.

Using P/SV/Av Mode

1. Set the mode dial to P, Sv or Av.

2. Press the UP/DOWN button.
   The built-in flash pops up.

3. Press the four-way controller (▼).
   The [Flash Mode] screen appears.

4. Select SLOW or SLOW and press the OK button.
   The shutter speed is set slower to give the proper exposure for the background.

5. Take a picture.
Using M Mode

1 Set the mode dial to M.

2 Set the shutter speed and aperture value to obtain the proper exposure.
   Set 1/180 sec. shutter speed or slower.

3 Press the UP/θ button.
   The built-in flash pops up.
   In M (Manual) mode, you can raise the built-in flash at any time prior to shooting.

4 Take a picture.

Using the Trailing Curtain Sync

Trailing Curtain Sync discharges the flash immediately before the shutter curtain closes. When shooting moving objects with a slow shutter speed, Trailing Curtain Sync and Slow-speed Sync produce different effects depending on when the flash is discharged.
For example, when shooting a moving car with Trailing Curtain Sync, trailing light is captured while the shutter is open and the flash captures the car immediately before the shutter is closed. Therefore, the picture will include a sharp, well-lit car with trailing lights behind it.

Slow-speed Sync

Trailing Curtain Sync
1 Set the mode dial to P, Sv, Tv, Av or M.

2 Press the four-way controller (▼). The [Flash Mode] screen appears.

3 Select SLOW or and press the OK button.

4 Press the UP/ button. The built-in flash pops up.

5 Take a picture.

memo Trailing Curtain Sync slows the shutter speed. Use the Shake Reduction function or turn off the Shake Reduction function and use a tripod to avoid camera shake.
Distance and Aperture when Using the Built-in Flash

Relationships between the guide number, aperture and distance must be considered when shooting with the flash to obtain the correct exposure. Calculate and adjust the shooting conditions if the flash output is not sufficient.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ISO Sensitivity</th>
<th>Built-in Flash Guide Number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ISO 200</td>
<td>Approx. 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISO 400</td>
<td>Approx. 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISO 800</td>
<td>Approx. 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISO 1600</td>
<td>Approx. 48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISO 3200</td>
<td>Approx. 64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISO 6400</td>
<td>Approx. 96</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Calculating Shooting Distance from Aperture Value

The following equation calculates the distance of the flash for aperture values.

Maximum flash distance $L_1 = \text{Guide number} \div \text{Aperture value}$

Minimum flash distance $L_2 = \frac{L_1}{5}$

* The value 5 used in the formula above is a fixed value which applies only when using the built-in flash alone.

Example)

When the sensitivity is ISO 200 and the aperture value is F4.0

$L_1 = 16 \div 4.0 = \text{approx. 4 (m)}$

$L_2 = 4 \div 5 = \text{approx. 0.8 (m)}$

Therefore, the flash can be used in a range of about 0.8 m to 4 m.

However, the built-in flash in this camera cannot be used when the distance is 0.7 m or less. When the flash is used at closer than 0.7 m, it causes vignetting in the picture corners, the light is distributed unevenly and the picture may be overexposed.

### Calculating Aperture Value from Shooting Distance

The following equation calculates the aperture value for shooting distances.

Aperture value $F = \frac{\text{Guide number}}{\text{Shooting distance}}$

Example)

When the sensitivity is ISO 200 and the shooting distance is 5 m, the aperture value is:

$F = 16 \div 5 = 3.2$

If the resulting number (3.2, in the above example) is not available as a lens aperture, the smaller number that is closest (2.8, in the above example) is generally used.
Lens Compatibility with the Built-in Flash

Depending on the lens used with the *K-α*, even if a lens without a hood is attached, the use of the built-in flash may not be available or may be limited due to vignetting.

DA, DA L, D FA, FA J, and FA lenses not listed below can be used without problems.

* The following lenses were evaluated without a hood.

### Unavailable due to vignetting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lens Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DA FISH-EYE 10-17mm F3.5-4.5ED (IF)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DA12-24mm F4ED AL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DA14mm F2.8ED (IF)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FA*300mm F2.8ED (IF)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FA*600mm F4ED (IF)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FA*250-600mm F5.6ED (IF)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Available depending on other factors

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lens Name</th>
<th>Restrictions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>F FISH-EYE 17-28mm F3.5-4.5</td>
<td>Vignetting may occur if the focal length is less than 20 mm.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DA16-45mm F4ED AL</td>
<td>When the focal length is less than 28 mm or when the focal length is 28 mm and the shooting distance is 1 m or less, vignetting may occur.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DA*16-50mm F2.8ED AL (IF) SDM</td>
<td>When the focal length is 20 mm or less or when the focal length is 35 mm and the shooting distance is less than 1.5 m, vignetting may occur.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DA17-70mm F4AL (IF) SDM</td>
<td>When the focal length is less than 24 mm or when the focal length is 24 mm and the shooting distance is 1 m or less, vignetting may occur.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DA18-250mm F3.5-6.3ED AL (IF)</td>
<td>Vignetting may occur if the focal length is less than 35 mm.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FA*28-70mm F2.8AL</td>
<td>Vignetting may occur if the focal length is 28 mm and the shooting distance is less than 1 m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FA SOFT 28mm F2.8</td>
<td>Built-in flash always discharges fully.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FA SOFT 85mm F2.8</td>
<td>Built-in flash always discharges fully.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Using the optional external flash AF540FGZ, AF360FGZ, AF200FG or AF160FC enables a variety of flash modes, such as P-TTL auto flash mode, depending on the external flash being used. See the chart below for details.

(✔: Available  #: Restricted  ×: Not available)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Camera Function</th>
<th>Flash</th>
<th>Built-in Flash</th>
<th>AF540FGZ AF360FGZ</th>
<th>AF200FG AF160FC</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Red-eye reduction flash</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auto flash discharge</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>After the flash is charged, the camera automatically switches to the flash sync speed.</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aperture value is automatically set in P mode and Tv mode.</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auto check in the viewfinder</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P-TTL auto flash</td>
<td>🟢 ×¹</td>
<td>🟢 ×¹</td>
<td>🟢 ×¹</td>
<td>🟢 ×¹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slow-speed Sync</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flash exposure compensation</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AF assist light of external flash</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trailing Curtain Sync ×²</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contrast-control-sync flash mode</td>
<td># ×³</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td># ×⁴</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slave flash</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multiple flash</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High-speed flash sync</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wireless flash</td>
<td># ×⁴</td>
<td>🟢 ×⁵</td>
<td>×</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1 Available only when using a DA, DA L, D FA, FA J, FA, F or A lens.
*2 Shutter speed of 1/90 sec. or slower.
*3 When combined with the AF540FGZ or AF360FGZ, 1/3 of the flash discharge can be output by the built-in flash and 2/3 can be output by the external flash.
*4 Available only when combined with the AF540FGZ or AF360FGZ.
*5 Multiple AF540FGZ or AF360FGZ units, or a combination of an AF540FGZ or AF360FGZ unit and the built-in flash is required.

Caution: Flashes with reversed polarity (the center contact on the hot shoe is minus) cannot be used due to the risk of damaging the camera or flash.
Using the Flash

**You can use [P-TTL Auto] with the AF540FGZ, AF360FGZ, AF200FG or AF160FC flash unit. The flash pre-flashes before the actual flash and confirms the subject (the distance, brightness, contrast, whether it is backlit, etc.) using the camera 16-segment metering sensor. The flash output for the actual flash is adjusted based on the information obtained from the pre-flash, enabling flash photography with more accurate exposure for the subject than with normal TTL auto.**

1. Remove the cover of the hot shoe and attach the external flash.
2. Turn on the camera and the external flash.
3. Set the external flash mode to [P-TTL auto].

---

**About the Display Panel for AF360FGZ**

The AF360FGZ itself does not have the function to set the FORMAT size to [DIGITAL]. However, when it is used with a SLR Digital Camera, the difference in focal length between a 35 mm camera and the $K-x$ is automatically calculated based on the difference in angle of view and is displayed on the panel (when using DA, DA L, D FA, FA J, FA or F lens).

The conversion indicator appears and the format size indicator disappears when the exposure metering timer of the $K-x$ is on (it returns to 35 mm format display when the exposure metering timer is turned off).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lens Focal Length</th>
<th>85mm /77mm</th>
<th>50mm</th>
<th>35mm</th>
<th>28mm /24mm</th>
<th>20mm</th>
<th>18 mm</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Exposure metering timer Off</td>
<td>85mm</td>
<td>70mm</td>
<td>50mm</td>
<td>35mm</td>
<td>28mm</td>
<td>24mm*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exposure metering timer On</td>
<td>58mm</td>
<td>48mm</td>
<td>34mm</td>
<td>24mm</td>
<td>19mm</td>
<td>16mm*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Using wide-angle panel

---

**Using P-TTL Auto Mode**

You can use [P-TTL Auto] with the AF540FGZ, AF360FGZ, AF200FG or AF160FC flash unit. The flash pre-flashes before the actual flash and confirms the subject (the distance, brightness, contrast, whether it is backlit, etc.) using the camera 16-segment metering sensor. The flash output for the actual flash is adjusted based on the information obtained from the pre-flash, enabling flash photography with more accurate exposure for the subject than with normal TTL auto.
4 Confirm that the external flash is fully charged and then take a picture.

- P-TTL auto is only available with an AF540FGZ, AF360FGZ, AF200FG or AF160FC flash unit.
- The 🔥 will light in the viewfinder when the flash is ready (fully charged).
- For details such as operation method and effective distance, please refer to the external flash manual.
- The flash does not discharge if the subject is bright enough when the flash mode is set to 🇯 or 🇯. Therefore, it may not be suitable for daylight-sync shooting.
- Never press the 🎉/📸 button when any external flash unit is attached to the camera. The built-in flash will hit the external flash. If you want to use both at once, set the wireless mode or connect them using the extension cord (p.169).

5 Using High-Speed Flash Sync Mode

With the AF540FGZ or AF360FGZ, you can discharge the flash to take a picture at a shutter speed faster than 1/180 seconds.

1 Remove the cover of the hot shoe and attach the external flash (AF540FGZ or AF360FGZ) to the camera.

2 Set the mode dial to Tv or M.

3 Turn on the camera and the external flash.

4 Set the external flash sync mode to HS 🇨 (high-speed flash sync).

5 Confirm that the external flash is fully charged and then take a picture.

- The 🔥 will light in the viewfinder when the flash is ready (fully charged).
- High-speed flash sync is available only when the shutter speed is set faster than 1/180 sec.
- High-speed flash sync is not available when the shutter speed is set to Bulb.
Using Flash in Wireless Mode

By using two external flashes (AF540FGZ or AF360FGZ) or using the built-in flash with one or more external flashes, you can shoot in P-TTL flash mode without connecting the flash units with a cord.

- Set the power switch of the external flash to WIRELESS.
- Two or more AF540FGZ/AF360FGZ external flashes are required to use high-speed flash sync in the wireless mode. This function cannot be used in combination with the built-in flash.
- Set the wireless mode of the external flash not directly connected to the camera to SLAVE.

Setting the Channel for the External Flash

First, set the channel for the external flash unit.

1. **Set the channel for the external flash unit.**

2. **Remove the cover of the hot shoe and attach the external flash.**

3. **Turn on the camera and the external flash, and press the shutter release button halfway.**

   The built-in flash is set to the same channel as the external flash unit.

- When set to mode, the channel currently set for the built-in flash is displayed in the viewfinder for 10 seconds.
- Be sure to set all the flashes to the same channel. Refer to the manual of AF540FGZ or AF360FGZ for details on how to set the channel on the external flash.
Using the Built-in Flash in Wireless Mode

Set the camera to wireless flash mode when using an external flash in combination with the built-in flash.

1. **Press the four-way controller (▼).**
   The [Flash Mode] screen appears.

2. **Select W↓ and press the OK button.**
   The camera is ready to take a picture.

When the drive mode is set to 3s (Remote Control (3s delay)) or the lens aperture is not set to the A position, W↓ cannot be selected.

Changing the Built-in Flash Discharge Method

You can change the built-in flash discharge method used in wireless mode.

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>On</td>
<td>Discharges the built-in flash as a master. (default setting)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>Discharges the built-in flash as a control flash.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

memo: HS ↓ (High-speed flash sync) is not available with the built-in flash.
### Wireless Shooting

#### Using a Combination of the Built-in Flash and an External Flash Unit

1. Remove the external flash unit after the channel is set on the camera, and place it at the desired location.

2. Set the camera flash to \( \frac{w}{f} \) mode, and press the \( \uparrow \) button.

3. Confirm that both flashes are fully charged and then take a picture.

#### Using a Combination of External Flash Units

1. Set the wireless mode of the external flash directly connected to the camera to [MASTER] or [CONTROL].

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MASTER</th>
<th>Sets the camera to discharge both the flash directly connected to the camera and the wireless flash unit.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CONTROL</td>
<td>Sets the camera to discharge the flash directly connected to the camera as a control flash only, not as the main flash.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. On the wireless remote flash unit, set the wireless flash mode to [SLAVE] and set the channel to the same channel as the flash directly connected to the camera. Then, place it at the desired location.

3. Confirm that both flashes are fully charged and then take a picture.

- The Shake Reduction function is automatically turned off in wireless mode.
- When using multiple AF540FGZ/AF360FGZ external flashes and performing high-speed flash sync shooting in wireless mode, set the flash directly connected to the camera to high-speed flash sync mode.
**Wireless Flash Control (P-TTL Flash Mode)**

When using external flash units (AF540FGZ or AF360FGZ) for wireless shooting, the following information is exchanged between the flash units before the flash is discharged.

Press the shutter release button fully.

1. The flash directly connected to the camera emits a control flash (relays the flash mode of the camera).
2. The wireless remote flash emits a test flash (relays confirmation of subject).
3. The flash directly connected to the camera emits a control flash (relays flash output to the wireless remote flash).
   * The flash directly connected to the camera will emit a control flash one more time after this to relay the flash duration time when HS (High-speed sync) is set.
4. The wireless remote flash discharges at the same time as the main flash.

When the wireless mode of the external flash directly connected to the camera is set to [MASTER] or [17. Flash in Wireless Mode] (p.166) is set to [On] for the built-in flash, all the flashes will discharge simultaneously.

---

**Red-Eye Reduction**

As with the built-in flash, the red-eye reduction function is available with an external flash. This may not be available on some flashes or may have restrictions for usage conditions. Refer to the chart on p.162.

- The red-eye reduction function works even when only an external flash is used. (p.71)
- If the red-eye reduction function of the built-in flash is used when the external flash is set as the slave unit or with the wireless function, the pre-flash for red-eye reduction will trigger the external flash. Do not use the red-eye reduction function when using a slave unit.
**Trailing Curtain Sync**

When using the built-in flash with an external flash (AF540FGZ or AF360FGZ) that is set to the Trailing Curtain Sync mode, the built-in flash will also use this mode. Confirm that both flash units are fully charged before shooting.

**Connecting an External Flash with an Extension Cord**

When using the built-in flash with an external flash that does not have a wireless flash mode function such as AF200FG, attach the Hot Shoe Adapter F8 (optional) to the camera hot shoe and an Off-Camera Shoe Adapter F (optional) to the bottom of the external flash, and connect these with the Extension Cord F5P (optional) as shown in the illustration below. The Off-Camera Shoe Adapter F can be mounted to your tripod using the tripod screw. Only a P-TTL auto flash can be used in combination with the built-in flash.

*When combining with the built-in flash*
Multiple Flash Shooting Using Extension Cords

You can combine two or more external flashes (AF540FGZ, AF360FGZ or AF200FG) or you can use two or more external flashes in combination with the built-in flash. You can use the extension cord connection terminal on the flash to connect the AF540FGZ. You can connect AF360FGZ or AF200FG units as shown in the illustration below. Connect an external flash and the Hot Shoe Adapter F (optional) to the Off-Camera Shoe Adapter F (optional) and then connect another Off-Camera Shoe Adapter F with external flash using the Extension Cord F5P (optional). Refer to the manual of the external flash for details.

When combining two or more external flashes

- Do not combine with accessories that have a different number of contacts such as a Hot Shoe Grip as a malfunction may occur.
- Combining with flashes from other manufacturers may cause equipment breakdown. We recommend using the AF540FGZ, AF360FGZ or AF200FG.

When using multiple external flashes or using an external flash with the built-in flash, P-TTL is used for flash control.
Contrast-Control-Sync Flash

Combining two or more external flashes (AF540FGZ, AF360FGZ or AF200FG) or using an external flash in combination with the built-in flash allows multiple flash photography (contrast-control-sync flash photography). This is based on the difference between the amounts of light discharged from multiple units.

1. Connect the external flash to the camera indirectly. Refer to p.169.

2. Set the sync mode for the external flash to contrast-control-sync mode.

3. Set the mode dial to P, Tv, Av or M.

4. Confirm that both the external flash and built-in flash are fully charged and then take a picture.

- The AF200FG must be combined with the AF540FGZ or AF360FGZ.
- Do not combine with accessories that have a different number of contacts, such as a Hot Shoe Grip, as a malfunction may occur.
- Combining with flashes from other manufacturers may cause equipment breakdown. We recommend using PENTAX automatic flashes.

- When using two or more external flashes and the contrast-control-sync mode is set on the external master flash unit, the flash output ratio is 2 (master unit) : 1 (slave units). When an external flash is used in combination with the built-in flash, the flash output ratio is 2 (external flash) : 1 (built-in flash).
- When using multiple external flashes or using an external flash with the built-in flash, P-TTL is used for flash control.
6 Shooting Settings

This chapter describes how to set the save format for pictures taken and other settings.

- Setting the File Format ............................................. 174
- Setting the Green Button Function ...................... 179
- Setting the White Balance ..................................... 182
- Correcting Images ..................................................... 189
- Setting the Image Finishing Tone ......................... 194
Setting the File Format

Setting the JPEG Recorded Pixels

You can select the number of recorded pixels from 12M, 10M, 6M and 2M. The more pixels there are, the larger the picture and the bigger the file size. The file size will also differ according to the [JPEG Quality] setting. The default setting is 12M.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recorded Pixels</th>
<th>Pixels</th>
<th>Paper Size</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>12M</td>
<td>4288×2848</td>
<td>14&quot;×17&quot; / A2 paper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10M</td>
<td>3936×2624</td>
<td>10&quot;×12&quot; / A3 paper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6M</td>
<td>3072×2048</td>
<td>8&quot;×10&quot; / A4 paper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2M</td>
<td>1728×1152</td>
<td>5&quot;×7&quot; / A5 paper</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The paper sizes above are references for optimal printing by recorded pixels. The quality of the captured photo or printed picture depends on the quality level, exposure control, resolution of the printer and a variety of other factors.

1. **Press the INFO button in the status screen.**
   The control panel appears.
   Press the INFO button when the status screen is not displayed.

2. **Use the four-way controller (▲▼◄►) to select [JPEG Recorded Pixels] and press the OK button.**
   The [JPEG Recorded Pixels] screen appears.
### Setting the JPEG Quality Level

You can set the image quality level. The file size will also differ according to the [JPEG Recorded Pixels] setting. The default setting is ★★★ (Best).

| ★★★ | Best          | Images will be clearer but file size will be larger. |
|★★   | Better        | Images will be grainier but file size will be smaller. |
|★    | Good          |                                                         |

#### Press the INFO button in the status screen.

The control panel appears.
Press the **INFO** button when the status screen is not displayed.
Use the four-way controller (▲▼◄►) to select [JPEG Quality] and press the OK button.

The [JPEG Quality] screen appears.

Use the four-way controller (◄►) to select a quality level.

When the quality level is changed, the number of recordable images at that quality level appears at the top right of the screen.

Press the OK button.

The camera returns to the control panel.

You can also change the setting from the [Rec. Mode 1] menu (p.79).
Setting the File Format

You can set the format of image files.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>File Format</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>JPEG</td>
<td>Captures images in JPEG format. You can change the number of recorded pixels in [JPEG Recorded Pixels], and the image quality level in [JPEG Quality]. The file size varies according to the settings. (default setting)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RAW</td>
<td>RAW data is CMOS sensor output data saved without processing. Effects of White Balance, Custom Image and Color Space are not applied to the images, but they are saved as actual original information. When you perform the development process by using RAW Development function (p.233), or using the provided software (PENTAX Digital Camera Utility 4) after transferring RAW data to a computer, you can create JPEG images with these effects.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RAW+</td>
<td>Images are saved in both RAW and JPEG formats. When [RAW Button Function] is assigned to the (Green) button, you can press the button to temporarily change the file format and save the image in both file formats. (p.180)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Caution: When Digital Filter (p.140), HDR Capture (p.191) or Cross Processing (p.196) is set, the file format is fixed to [JPEG] and cannot be changed. To change the file format, turn these functions off.

1. Press the INFO button in the status screen.
   The control panel appears.
   Press the INFO button when the status screen is not displayed.

2. Use the four-way controller (▲▼◄►) to select [File Format] and press the OK button.
   The [File Format] screen appears.
3 **Use the four-way controller (◄►) to select a file format.**

When the file format is changed, the number of recordable images appears at the top right of the screen.

4 **Press the OK button.**

The camera returns to the control panel.

**memo**
- You can also change the setting from the [Rec. Mode 1] menu (p.79).
- The file format is fixed to [JPEG] in [Stage Lighting] or [Night Snap] of [SCN] (Scene) mode.

### Setting the RAW File Format

You can select PEF or DNG format in [RAW File Format] of the [Rec. Mode 3] menu (p.79) when capturing images in RAW format.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PEF</th>
<th>PENTAX’s original RAW file format (default setting)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DNG</td>
<td>General-purpose, publicly available RAW file format designed by Adobe Systems</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Setting the Green Button Function

You can assign one of the following functions to the (Green) button and access the function by simply pressing the button while shooting.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Green Button</td>
<td>Resets the values being adjusted. (default setting)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Custom Image</td>
<td>Sets the Custom Image settings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optical Preview</td>
<td>Displays the Optical Preview.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Digital Preview</td>
<td>Displays the Digital Preview. You can set whether or not to display the histogram and Bright/Dark Area warning during Digital Preview.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Digital Filter</td>
<td>Displays the digital filter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RAW Button Function</td>
<td>Temporarily changes the file format. By default, simultaneously saves the image in both JPEG and RAW format, regardless of the [File Format] setting. You can select whether the setting applies to only one image and the file format when the button is pressed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Center AF Point</td>
<td>Returns AF point to the center of the AF frame if [Select AF Point] is set to (Select) and the AF point has been changed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

   The [Green Button] screen appears.

2. Press the four-way controller (▶).
3 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select a function to assign to the ○ button, and press the OK button.

4 Press the MENU button twice.

The screen that was displayed before selecting the menu appears again.

Setting the RAW Button Function

When [RAW Button Function] is assigned to the ○ button, specify the function settings.

1 Select [RAW Button Function] in Step 3 of “Setting the Green Button Function”.

2 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Cancel after 1 shot].

3 Use the four-way controller (◄►) to select ✔ or □.

| ✔ | The recording format returns to the original file format after a picture is taken. (default setting) |
| □ | The setting is canceled when the following operations are performed.
- The ○ button is pressed again
- The ▶ button or MENU button is pressed
- The main switch is turned off
- The mode dial is turned |
4 Use the four-way controller (▲ ▼) to choose a file format. The left side is the [File Format] setting and the right side is the file format when the ◯ button is pressed.

5 Press the four-way controller (►), and use the four-way controller (▲ ▼) to select a file format when the ◯ button is pressed.

6 Press the OK button.

7 Press the MENU button twice. The screen that was displayed before selecting the menu appears again.
Setting the White Balance

White balance is the function for adjusting the color of an image so that white objects appear white. Set the white balance if you are not satisfied with the color balance of pictures taken with white balance set to **AWB (Auto)**, or to intentionally apply a creative effect to your images.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Settings</th>
<th>Color Temperature *1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>AWB</strong> Auto</td>
<td>Automatically adjusts the white balance. (default setting)</td>
<td>Approx. 4,000 to 8,000K</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☀ Daylight</td>
<td>For use when taking pictures in sunlight.</td>
<td>Approx. 5,200K</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🌧 Shade</td>
<td>For use when taking pictures in the shade. It reduces the bluish color tones in a picture.</td>
<td>Approx. 8,000K</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>⛅ Cloudy</td>
<td>For use when taking pictures on cloudy days.</td>
<td>Approx. 6,000K</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☀ Fluorescent Light</td>
<td>For use when taking pictures under fluorescent lighting. Select the type of fluorescent light.</td>
<td>Approx. 6,500K to 5,000K, 4,200K, 3,000K</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Fluorescent Light Daylight Color</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N</td>
<td>Fluorescent Light Daylight White</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W</td>
<td>Fluorescent Light Cool White</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>Fluorescent Light Warm White</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>⚡ Flash</td>
<td>For use when taking pictures using the built-in flash.</td>
<td>Approx. 5,400K</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CTE *2</td>
<td>Use this to keep and strengthen the color tone of the light source in the image.</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>📡 Manual</td>
<td>Use this to manually adjust the white balance according to the lighting so that white objects appear as a natural white.</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1 The color temperature (K) is an estimate. This does not indicate precise colors.

*2 CTE= Color Temperature Enhancement
Set the mode dial to P, Sv, Tv, Av, or M.

2 Press the four-way controller ( ◀ ) in Capture mode.

3 Press the four-way controller ( ▲ ▼ ) to select the white balance.

Available operations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Button</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Av</td>
<td>You can use Digital Preview to preview the background image with the setting applied.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INFO</td>
<td>Saves the background image. Select [Save as] and press the OK button.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4 Press the OK button.
The camera is ready to take a picture.

- White balance cannot be adjusted when Capture mode is set to Picture mode or SCN (Scene) mode, or when Cross Processing is set.
- Because the light source changes when a flash discharges, you can set the white balance for when the flash discharges. Select [Auto White Balance], [Unchanged] or [Flash] in [8. WB When Using Flash] of the [C Custom Setting 2] menu (p.81).
**Color Temperature**

The color of light shifts towards blue as the color temperature rises, and towards red as the color temperature falls. Color temperature describes this change in light color in terms of absolute temperature (K: Kelvin). This camera is capable of setting the white balance to enable taking pictures with natural coloring under a variety of lighting conditions.

![Color Temperature Diagram]

**Adjusting the White Balance Manually**

You can adjust the white balance depending on the light source when taking pictures. With the manual white balance, the camera can store delicate shades that cannot be precisely adjusted with the white balance preset values provided in the camera. This provides the optimum white balance for your surroundings.
1 Select ☐ in Step 3 on p.183 and press the four-way controller (►).

2 Under the light to measure the white balance, fully display a white sheet of paper in the viewfinder or select a white area as the subject.

3 Press the shutter release button fully.
Set the focus mode lever to MF when the shutter cannot be released. The screen to select the measuring range is displayed.

4 Use the e-dial to select the entire screen or spot area for the measuring range.

5 When a spot area is selected, use the four-way controller (▲ ▼ ◄ ►) to move the frame to the position you want to measure.
Press the **OK** button.
The white balance fine-tuning screen appears when measuring is completed. Adjust the white balance as necessary. (p.186)

Press the **OK** button.
The camera returns to the [White Balance] screen.

Press the **OK** button.
The camera is ready to take a picture.

- No image is recorded when the shutter release button is pressed to adjust the white balance.
- The message [The operation could not be completed correctly] appears when measuring is unsuccessful. Press the **OK** button while displayed to remeasure the white balance.
- If the picture is extremely overexposed or underexposed, the white balance may not be adjusted. In this case, adjust to the proper exposure before adjusting the white balance.
- When the mode dial is set to 🎥 (Movie), the white balance cannot be measured. Adjust the white balance in any capture mode other than 🎥 before recording a movie.

**Fine-Tuning the White Balance**

You can fine-tune the white balance settings.

1. **Perform the desired setting in Step 3 on p.183.**
2. **Press the four-way controller (►).**
The fine-tuning screen appears.
3 **Fine-tune the white balance.**

Seven levels (225 patterns) are available on the G-M and B-A axes.

**Available operations**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Four-way controller (▲ ▼)</th>
<th>Adjusts the tone of the colors between green (G) and magenta (M).</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Four-way controller (◄ ►)</td>
<td>Adjusts the tone of the colors between blue (B) and amber (A).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Green) button</td>
<td>Resets the adjustment value. (Available only when [Green Button] is assigned to (Green) button in [Green Button] of the [Rec. Mode 4] menu (p.179).)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4 **Press the OK button.**

The camera returns to the [White Balance] screen.

5 **Press the OK button.**

The camera is ready to take a picture.

When set to Shade, the white balance can also be measured in the fine-tuning screen by pressing the shutter release button fully (except while recording a movie).

### Setting the Color Space

You can set the color space to use.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Color Space</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sRGB</td>
<td>Sets to sRGB color space. (default setting)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AdobeRGB</td>
<td>Sets to AdobeRGB color space.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

File names differ depending on the color space setting as shown below.
For sRGB: IMGPxxxx.JPG
For AdobeRGB: _IGPxxxx.JPG
“xxxx” indicates the file number. This is displayed as a four-digit sequential number. (p.252)

**Color Space**

Color ranges for various input/output devices, such as digital cameras, monitors, and printers, differ. This color range is called the Color Space.

To recreate different color spaces in different devices, standard color spaces have been proposed. This camera supports sRGB and AdobeRGB.

sRGB is mainly used for devices such as a computer.
AdobeRGB covers a wider range of color than sRGB and is used for occupational uses such as industrial printing.

An image created in AdobeRGB may appear lighter than an image created in sRGB when output from an sRGB compatible device.
The camera and lens properties can be automatically adjusted when taking pictures.

**Adjusting the Brightness**

Adjusts the brightness and prevents bright and dark areas from occurring.

**Highlight Correction**

Expands the dynamic range and the light level expressed by the CMOS sensor and prevents bright areas from occurring.

1. **Press the INFO button in the status screen.**
   
The control panel appears.
   
Press the INFO button when the status screen is not displayed.

2. **Use the four-way controller (▲▼ ◄►) to select [Highlight Correction] and press the OK button.**
   
The [Highlight Correction] screen appears.

3. **Use the four-way controller (◄►) to select [Off] or [On].**

4. **Press the OK button.**
   
The camera returns to the control panel.
• When [Highlight Correction] is set to [On], the minimum sensitivity is set to ISO 400. If [3. Expanded Sensitivity] in the [C Custom Setting 1] menu (p.81) is set to [On], the sensitivity is set to ISO 200.
• When Capture mode is set to (Stage Lighting) or (Night Snap) of SCN (Scene) mode, [Highlight Correction] is fixed to [On].

**Shadow Correction**

Expands the dynamic range and the light level expressed by the CMOS sensor and prevents dark areas from occurring.

1. **Press the INFO button in the status screen.**
   The control panel appears.
   Press the INFO button when the status screen is not displayed.

2. **Use the four-way controller (▲▼◄►) to select [Shadow Correction] and press the OK button.**
   The [Shadow Correction] screen appears.

3. **Use the four-way controller (◄►) to select [Off], [Low], [Medium] or [High].**

4. **Press the OK button.**
   The camera returns to the control panel.

You can also set Highlight Correction and Shadow Correction in [D-Range Setting] of the [Rec. Mode 1] menu (p.79).
HDR Capture

Enables capturing images at high dynamic range. Takes three frames (underexposed, standard (proper exposure) and overexposed) to create a single composite image with them.

1. **Press the INFO button in the status screen.**
   The control panel appears.
   Press the INFO button when the status screen is not displayed.

2. **Use the four-way controller (▲▼◄►) to select [HDR Capture] and press the OK button.**
   The [HDR Capture] screen appears.

3. **Use the four-way controller (◄►) to select [Off], [Standard] or [Strong].**

4. **Press the OK button.**
   The camera returns to the control panel.

- When HDR Capture is set, the file format is always set to [JPEG] and cannot be changed. You cannot use HDR Capture when the file format is set to [RAW].
- When HDR Capture is set, Multi-exposure is not available. Also, the drive modes other than ◀ (Single Frame Shooting) and ▪ (Remote Control) are not available.
- HDR Capture cannot be used with Cross Processing or Digital Filter at the same time. The mode set last is used.
- You cannot use HDR Capture when the shutter speed is set to Bulb.
- During HDR Capture, multiple frames are combined together to create a single image, so it will take time to save an image.
- During HDR Capture, pressing the MENU button while an image is being saved cancels the process and saves the image as a standard image.
- The Shake Reduction function is automatically turned off when HDR Capture is set. In this case, use a tripod to prevent camera shake.
Shooting Settings

Reduces distortions and lateral chromatic aberrations occurring due to lens properties.

- **Distortion**
  Distortion is the phenomenon in which the center of the image appears inflated (barrel distortion) or the center of the image appears pinched (pincushion distortion). Distortion occurs more easily when using a zoom lens or a lens with a small aperture, and straight walls or the horizon in the image appear curved.

- **Lateral chromatic aberration**
  Lateral chromatic aberration is the phenomenon in which the magnification of the image varies according to the colors (wavelengths of light) when a picture was taken, and may cause a blurred image. Chromatic aberration occurs more easily at shorter focal lengths.
1 Press the INFO button in the status screen.

The control panel appears.
Press the INFO button when the status screen is not displayed.

2 Use the four-way controller (▲▼◄►) to select [Distortion Correction] or [Lat-Chromatic-Ab Adj] and press the OK button.

The [Distortion Correction] or [Lat-Chromatic-Ab Adj] screen appears.

3 Use the four-way controller (◄►) to select [Off] or [On].

4 Press the OK button.

The camera returns to the control panel.

- Corrections can only be made when using a DA, DA L or D FA lens. [Distortion Correction] and [Lat-Chromatic-Ab Adj] cannot be selected when an incompatible lens is attached.
- [Distortion Correction] is disabled when using a DA FISH-EYE 10-17mm.
- The Lens Correction function is disabled when using an accessory such as a close-up ring or rear converter that is attached between the camera and the lens.
- The shooting speed for continuous shooting may be slower when the Lens Correction function is activated.
- The effects of Lens Correction function may be barely noticeable in some cases due to the shooting conditions or other factors.

- When a compatible lens is attached and the file format is set to [RAW] or [RAW+], the correction information is saved as a RAW file parameter and you can select [On] or [Off] when developing the RAW images. (p.236)
- You can also set [Distortion Correction] and [Lat-Chromatic-Ab Adj] in [Lens Correction] of the [Rec. Mode 1] menu (p.79).
Setting the Image Finishing Tone

Setting Custom Image

You can set the image finishing tone before shooting when the capture mode is set to **P** (Program), **Sv** (Sensitivity Priority), **Tv** (Shutter Priority), **Av** (Aperture Priority) or **M** (Manual).

Select from the following seven modes for Image Tone: Bright (default setting), Natural, Portrait, Landscape, Vibrant, Muted and Monochrome. You can adjust the following items for Image Tone.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Settings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Saturation*1</td>
<td>Sets the color saturation. (Available settings: -4 to +4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hue*1</td>
<td>Sets the color. (Available settings: -4 to +4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High/Low Key Adj</td>
<td>Changes the brightness of the image. (Available settings: -4 to +4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contrast</td>
<td>Sets the image contrast. (Available settings: -4 to +4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sharpness*2</td>
<td>Sets the sharpness of the image outlines. (Available settings: -4 to +4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Filter Effect*3</td>
<td>Changes the contrast to appear as if a B&amp;W color filter was used. Sets the filter color. (Available settings: [None], [Green], [Yellow], [Orange], [Red], [Magenta], [Blue], [Cyan], [Infrared Filter])</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Toning*3</td>
<td>Sets the level for cold tone adjustment (- direction) and warm tone adjustment (+ direction). (Available settings: -4 to +4)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1 This can be set when any mode other than [Monochrome] is selected.

*2 You can also change the setting to [Fine Sharpness], which makes image outlines even thinner and sharper.

*3 This can be set when [Monochrome] is selected.

Custom Image cannot be used when Cross Processing is set.

1. **Press the INFO button in the status screen.**
   The control panel appears.
   Press the **INFO** button when the status screen is not displayed.
2 Use the four way controller (↑↓←→) to select a custom image and press the OK button.

The [Custom Image] screen appears. After the power is turned on, the last image taken is displayed in the background.

3 Use the four-way controller (↑↓) to select an image tone.

4 Use the four-way controller (↑↓) to choose an item you want to change.

When Image Tone is set to [Monochrome], you can change the settings for Filter Effect, Toning, Contrast, and Sharpness.
5 Use the four-way controller ( ◄ ► ) to change the setting.

The background image changes according to the settings.
You can visually check the saturation and hue with the radar chart. (This is not displayed when Image Tone is set to [Monochrome].)

Available operations

| e-dial | Switches between [Sharpness] and [Fine Sharpness]. When set to [Fine Sharpness], image outlines can be captured with more detail. |
| (Green) button | Resets the set value. (Available only when [Green Button] is assigned to the (Green) button in [Green Button] of the [Rec. Mode 4] menu (p.179).) |
| INFO button | Saves the background image. Select [Save as] and press the OK button. (Not available during Live View.) |

6 Press the OK button.

The camera returns to the control panel.

You can also change the settings from the [Rec. Mode 1] menu (p.79).

---

Setting Cross Processing

Cross processing is the procedure of deliberately processing a film in the wrong type of chemicals to create an image with different colors and contrast. This camera features digital cross processing, which is done internally.

1 Press the INFO button in the status screen.

The control panel appears.
Press the INFO button when the status screen is not displayed.
2 Use the four-way controller (▲▼◄►) to select [Cross Processing] and press the OK button.

The [Cross Processing] screen appears.

3 Use the four-way controller (◄►) to select [Off] or [On].

4 Press the OK button.

The camera returns to the control panel.

- When Cross Processing is set, the file format is fixed to [JPEG] and cannot be changed. When the file format is set to [RAW], Cross Processing cannot be selected.
- When Cross Processing is set, Multi-exposure cannot be selected.
- Cross Processing and HDR Capture cannot be used at the same time. The function set last is used.
- When Cross Processing is set, settings for Custom Image and White Balance cannot be changed.

You can also change the setting from the [Rec. Mode 2] menu (p.79).
7 Playback Functions

This chapter describes how to use the various playback functions in Playback mode.

Playback Functions Operation .........................200
Enlarging Images ...............................................202
Displaying Multiple Images ...............................204
Slideshow ...........................................................210
Rotating Images .................................................213
Comparing Images .............................................214
Deleting Multiple Images ...................................215
Protecting Images from Deletion (Protect) ......219
Connecting the Camera to an AV Device ........221
Perform settings related to playing back images in the playback mode palette or [Playback] menu.

For details on how to operate the menus, see “Using the Menus” (p.35).

### Playback Mode Palette Setting Items

Press the four-way controller (▼) in Playback mode to display the playback mode palette.
You can display the playback mode palette even when a movie is paused.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Image Rotation</td>
<td>Rotates images.</td>
<td>p.213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Digital Filter*¹</td>
<td>Changes the color tone of images, adds softening and slimming effects, or adjusts the brightness.</td>
<td>p.227</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resize*¹</td>
<td>Changes the number of recorded pixels and quality level and saves it as a new image.</td>
<td>p.224</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cropping</td>
<td>Cuts out only the desired area of the picture and saves it as a new image.</td>
<td>p.225</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slideshow</td>
<td>Plays back the images one after another.</td>
<td>p.211</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RAW Development*²</td>
<td>Converts RAW images to JPEG format.</td>
<td>p.233</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
You can perform the following settings in the [Playback] menu.

Press the MENU button in Playback mode to display the [Playback 1] menu.

### Playback Function Setting Items

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Index</td>
<td>Joins a number of images together and creates a new image from them.</td>
<td>p.207</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Image Comparison</td>
<td>Displays two images side-by-side.</td>
<td>p.214</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Protect</td>
<td>Protects images from being accidentally erased.</td>
<td>p.219</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DPOF*1</td>
<td>Sets the DPOF settings.</td>
<td>p.255</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1 This cannot be performed when a RAW image is displayed.

*2 This cannot be performed when a JPEG image is displayed.

### Playback Menu Setting Items

You can perform the following settings in the [Playback] menu.

Press the MENU button in Playback mode to display the [Playback 1] menu.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Menu</th>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Slideshow</td>
<td>Plays back the images one after another. You can set how images will be</td>
<td>p.210</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>displayed in the slideshow.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[1]</td>
<td>Playback Display</td>
<td>Sets whether to display the Bright/Dark Area warning in Playback mode</td>
<td>p.203</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Method</td>
<td>and also sets the initial magnification when enlarging images.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Delete All Images</td>
<td>You can delete all saved images at once.</td>
<td>p.218</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Enlarging Images

Images can be magnified up to 16 times in Playback mode.

1 Use the four-way controller ( ◄ ► ) to select an image in Playback mode.

2 Turn the e-dial to the right (toward ◙).

The image enlarges at each click (1.2 times to 16 times).

Available operations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Four-way controller ( ◄ ► ◄ ► )</th>
<th>Moves the area to enlarge.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>e-dial to the right ( ◙ )</td>
<td>Enlarges image (up to 16 times).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e-dial to the left ( ◯ )</td>
<td>Reduces image (up to 1.2 times*).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OK button</td>
<td>Returns to the original size.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INFO button</td>
<td>Switches information display On/Off.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* The default setting for the first click (minimum magnification) is 1.2 times. You can change this in [Playback Display Method] of the [Playback 1] menu. (p.203)

- You can enlarge the image by following the same procedure during Instant Review (p.63), Digital Preview (p.127) or Live View (p.147).
- The initial full display of vertical images is displayed with a magnification of 0.75 times that of horizontal images, therefore, magnification at the first click starts at 1.0 times.
Setting the Playback Display Method

You can set whether or not to display the Bright/Dark Area warning in Playback mode and set the initial magnification when enlarging images.

   The [Playback Display Method] screen appears.

2. Use the four-way controller ( ◄ ► ) to select ☑ or ☐ for [Bright/Dark Area].

3. Use the four-way controller ( ▲ ◄ ) to select [Quick Zoom].

4. Press the four-way controller ( ► ) and use the four-way controller ( ▲ ◄ ) to select the magnification.
   Select from [Off] (default setting), [×2], [×4], [×8] or [×16].

5. Press the OK button.

6. Press the MENU button twice.
   The screen that was displayed before selecting the menu appears again.
You can display 4, 9, 16 or 36 images on the monitor at the same time. The default setting is nine image-display.

1. Turn the e-dial to the left (toward $\searrow$) in Playback mode.

The multi-image display screen appears.
Up to nine thumbnail images will be displayed at once.
Available operations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Four-way controller (▲▼◄►)</th>
<th>Moves the selection frame</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>INFO button</td>
<td>Displays the [Multi-img Display Setting] screen. Use the four-way controller (◄►) to select the number of images to display at the same time.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

((Display Type) cannot be selected when developing multiple RAW images (p.234).)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>4_UP/ 4_DOWN button</th>
<th>Selects multiple images and deletes them. (p.215)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

2 Press the OK button.
A full screen display of the selected image appears.

Displaying Images by Folder

Images will be grouped and displayed by the folder in which they are saved.

1 In the multi-image display screen, turn the e-dial to the left (toward 3) again.
The folder display screen appears.
2 Select the folder you want to display.

Available operations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operation</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Four-way controller</td>
<td>Moves the selection frame.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(\uparrow\uparrow\downarrow)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(\uparrow\uparrow\downarrow) button</td>
<td>Deletes the selected folder and all the images in it. (p.216)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3 Press the OK button.
The multi-image display screen for the selected folder appears.

Displaying Images by Shooting Date (Calendar Display)

Images will be grouped and displayed by shooting date.

1 In the multi-image display screen, press the INFO button.
The [Multi-img Display Setting] screen appears.

2 Press the INFO button again.
The calendar display screen appears. Only the dates when pictures were taken are displayed.
Available operations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operation</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Four-way controller (▲ ▼)</td>
<td>Selects a shooting date.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Four-way controller (◄ ►)</td>
<td>Selects an image taken on the selected shooting date.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e-dial to the right (ŋ)</td>
<td>Displays the selected image. Turn to the left (ן) to return to calendar display.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INFO button</td>
<td>The camera returns to the multi-image display screen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>▲UP/▼ button</td>
<td>Deletes selected images.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3 Press the OK button.
A full screen display of the selected image appears.

Joining Multiple Images (Index)

Join a number of images together and display them as an index print. You can also save the displayed index print as a new image. You can select the images to include in the index print and have them randomly-arranged.

1 Press the four-way controller (▼) in Playback mode.
The playback mode palette appears.

2 Use the four-way controller (▲ ▼ ◄ ►) to select (Index) and press the OK button.
The [Index] screen appears.

3 Press the four-way controller (►).

4 Use the four-way controller (▲ ▼) to select a layout and press the OK button.
You can select (Thumbnail), (Square), (Random1), (Random2), (Random3) or (Bubble).
5 Use the four-way controller (▲ ▼) to select [Images] and press the four-way controller (►).

6 Use the four-way controller (▲ ▼) to select the number of images and press the OK button.
   You can select 12, 24 or 36 images.

7 Use the four-way controller (▲ ▼) to select [Backgrnd.] and press the four-way controller (►).

8 Use the four-way controller (▲ ▼) to select the background color and press the OK button.
   You can select a white or black background.

9 Use the four-way controller (▲ ▼) to select [Selection] and press the four-way controller (►).

10 Use the four-way controller (▲ ▼) to select the type of image selection and press the OK button.
Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Create an image] and press the OK button.

The index image is created and a confirmation screen appears.

Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Save] or [Reshuffle] and press the OK button.

Save
The index image is saved as a [6M] and ★★★ file.

Reshuffle
Reselects the images included in the index and displays a new index image. However, if [Thumbnail] is selected for [Layout], this is not displayed.

After the index image is saved, the camera returns to Playback mode and the index image is displayed.

- Processing may take a while when creating an index image.
- When the number of saved images is smaller than the number set for [Images], empty spaces will appear in [Thumbnail] layout and some images may be duplicated in other layouts.
- The images are positioned in order starting from the smallest file number when [Thumbnail] or [Square] is selected.
210

Slideshow

You can play back all images saved on your SD Memory Card successively.

Setting the Slideshow Display

Sets how images will be displayed during the Slideshow.

1 Press the MENU button in Playback mode.
The [Playback 1] menu appears.

2 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Slideshow] and press the four-way controller (▶).
The screen to make the slideshow settings appears.

3 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select the item you want to change.
The following items can be changed.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Setting</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Interval</td>
<td>Select the image display interval.</td>
<td>3sec. (default setting)/5sec./10sec./30sec.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Screen Effect</td>
<td>Select the transition effect when the next image is displayed.</td>
<td>Off (default setting)/Fade/Wipe/Stripe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Repeat Playback</td>
<td>Set whether to start the slideshow again from the beginning after the last image is displayed.</td>
<td>□ (default setting)/✓</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
4 Press the four-way controller (►) and use the four-way controller (▲▼) to change the setting.

Starting the Slideshow

1 Select [Start] in Step 3 on p.210 and press the OK button. Or, select ▶️ (Slideshow) in the playback mode palette and press the OK button.

The start screen is displayed and the slideshow begins.

Available operations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Button</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>OK button</td>
<td>Pauses playback. Press again to resume playback.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Four-way controller (◄)</td>
<td>Shows the previous image.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Four-way controller (►)</td>
<td>Shows the next image.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Four-way controller (▼)</td>
<td>Stops playback.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2 Stop the slideshow.

Slideshow ends when one of the following operations is performed during playback or when paused.

- The four-way controller (▼) is pressed*1
- The ▶ button is pressed*1
- The MENU button is pressed*1
- The shutter release button is pressed halfway or fully*2
- The mode dial is turned*2
- The AF/AE-L button is pressed*2

*1 After slideshow ends, the camera switches to normal Playback mode.
*2 After slideshow ends, the camera switches to Capture mode.

For movies, only the first frame is displayed and then the next image is displayed after the set interval has elapsed. To play a movie during a slideshow, press the OK button while the first frame is displayed. After the movie has finished playing, the slideshow will resume.
Rotating Images

You can rotate the image displayed 90° counterclockwise at a time and save the rotated image. The image rotation information is saved with the image and during playback it will be displayed in portrait orientation.

**Memo**
- When [18. Saving Rotation Info] in the [C Custom Setting 3] menu (p.82) is set to [Off], the image rotation information is not saved when shooting.
- When [19. Auto Image Rotation] in the [C Custom Setting 3] menu (p.82) is set to [On], the image is automatically rotated during playback according to the image rotation information.

**Caution**
You cannot change the image rotation information in the following conditions.
- When the image is protected
- When the image rotation information is not saved with the image
- When [19. Auto Image Rotation] in the [C Custom Setting 3] menu (p.82) is set to [Off]

1. **Select the image you want to rotate in Playback mode.**

2. **Press the four-way controller (▼).**
The playback mode palette appears.

3. **Use the four-way controller (▲ ▼ ◀▶) to select (Image Rotation) and press the OK button.**
The selected image is rotated in 90° increments and the four thumbnail images are displayed.

4. **Use the four-way controller (▲ ▼ ◀▶) to select the rotation direction and press the OK button.**
The image rotation information is saved.
Comparing Images

You can display two images side-by-side.

1. **Press the four-way controller (▼) in Playback mode.**
   The playback mode palette appears.

2. **Use the four-way controller (▲ ▼ ◀ ◁) to select ▼ (Image Comparison) and press the OK button.**
   The last image displayed will be displayed twice side-by-side.

3. **Select two images you want to compare using the e-dial and compare them at left and right.**
   You can perform the following operations while comparing the images.

   ![Image Comparison Example]

   **Available operations**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Button</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>OK button</td>
<td>Moves the selection frame to the right image, both images, and left image each time the button is pressed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Four-way controller (▲ ▼ ◀ ◁)</td>
<td>Moves the area to enlarge. When the selection frame is placed on both images, you can manipulate both images at the same time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Green (▲) button</td>
<td>Returns the enlarge display position to the center.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
   | e-dial       | When the selection frame is placed on the left or right image, the previous or next image is displayed.  
               | When the selection frames are placed on both images, you can enlarge or reduce both images simultaneously in the same magnification. |
   | INFO button  | Switches information display On/Off.                                     |
   | UP/UP button | When the selection frame is placed on the left or right image, the selected image is deleted.    |

4. **Press the MENU button.**
   The camera returns to the normal playback mode.
Deleting Multiple Images

Deleting Selected Images

You can delete multiple images in the multi-image display at once.

Deleted images cannot be restored.

- Protected images cannot be deleted.
- You can select up to 100 images at a time.

1. Turn the e-dial to the left (toward  ) in Playback mode.
   The multi-image display screen appears.

2. Press the  button.
   The screen to select the images to delete is displayed.

3. Select the images to delete.
Available operations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Four-way controller (▲▼◀▶)</th>
<th>Moves the selection frame</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>OK button</td>
<td>Adds ✔ and selects an image. Press again to return to □. Protected images (_FLUSH) cannot be selected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e-dial</td>
<td>Displays a full screen display of the image selected with the selection frame. When the image is displayed full screen, press the four-way controller (◀▶) to display the previous or next image.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4 Press the 7UP/8 button.
The delete confirmation screen appears.

5 Press the four-way controller (▲) to select [Select & Delete].

6 Press the OK button.
The selected images are deleted.

Deleting a Folder

You can delete the selected folder and all the images in it.

1 Turn the e-dial two clicks to the left (toward ◀) in Playback mode.
The folder display screen appears.
2 Use the four-way controller (▲▼◄►) to select a folder to delete and press the \UP/\DOWN button.

The delete folder confirmation screen appears.

3 Press the four-way controller (▲) to select [Delete].

4 Press the OK button.

The folder and all images in it are deleted.
The confirmation screen appears when there are protected images. Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Delete All] or [Leave All] and press the OK button. When [Delete All] is selected, protected images are also deleted.
Deleting All Images

You can delete all saved images at once.

Deleted images cannot be restored.

1. Select [Delete All Images] in the [Playback 1] menu and press the four-way controller (►).
   The confirmation screen for deleting all images is displayed.

2. Press the four-way controller (▲) to select [Delete All Images].

3. Press the OK button.
   All images are deleted.
   The confirmation screen appears when there are protected images. Use the four-way controller (▲ ▼) to select [Delete All] or [Leave All] and press the OK button.
   When [Delete All] is selected, protected images are also deleted.
Protecting Images from Deletion (Protect)

You can protect images from being accidentally deleted.

Caution: Even protected images are deleted if the inserted SD Memory Card is formatted.

Protecting a Single Image

1. Press the four-way controller (▼) in Playback mode.
   The playback mode palette appears.

2. Use the four-way controller (▲▼◄►) to select 〇 (Protect) and press the OK button.
   The screen to select the Protect setting method is displayed.

3. Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Single Image] and press the OK button.

4. Use the four-way controller (◄►) to select an image to protect.

5. Press the four-way controller (▲) to select [Protect].
   Select [Unprotect] to cancel the protection of the image.
6 Press the OK button.
The image is protected and the icon appears at the top right of the screen.
Repeat Steps 4 to 6 to protect other images.

Protecting All Images

1 Select [All Images] in Step 3 on p.219 and press the OK button.

2 Press the four-way controller (▲) to select [Protect] and press the OK button.
All images saved on the SD Memory Card are protected.
Select [Unprotect] to cancel the protection of all images.
Connecting the Camera to an AV Device

You can connect the camera to a TV or other device with a video IN jack and play back images. Use the optional AV cable (I-AVC7).

1. **Turn the AV device and camera off.**

2. **Open the terminal cover, face the arrow on the AV cable toward the ▲ mark on the camera, and connect the cable to the PC/AV terminal.**

3. **Connect the other end of the AV cable to the video IN jack on the AV device.**

4. **Turn the AV device and camera on.**

   The camera turns on in video mode, and the camera information is displayed on the screen of the connected AV device.

   - If you intend to use the camera continuously for a long period, use of the AC adapter kit K-AC84 (optional) is recommended. (p.42)
   - For an AV device with multiple video IN jacks, check the operating manual of the AV device, and select a suitable video IN jack for connecting the camera.
   - The camera monitor turns off while the camera is connected to the AV device. You cannot adjust the volume on the camera. Adjust the volume on the AV device.
Selecting the Video Output Format

When the hometown is set at the time of initial setting (p.52), the video output format is set in accordance with that region. Depending on the country or region, images may fail to be played back with the set video output format. If this happens, change the video output format setting.


2. Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [NTSC] or [PAL].

3. Press the OK button.

4. Press the MENU button.

The video output format is set.

The video output format differs depending on the region. When you set [Setting the Time] in the World Time setting (p.244) to ◀ (Destination), the video output setting changes to the video output format for that city.
This chapter describes how to process pictures taken and edit RAW images.

Changing the Image Size ...........................................224
Processing Images with Digital Filters ...............227
Developing RAW Images .................................233
Readjusting Images Shot in JPEG Format ......238
Changes the number of recorded pixels and quality level of the image, and saves the image as a new file.

### Changing the Number of Recorded Pixels and Quality Level (Resize)

Changes the number of recorded pixels and quality level of the selected image and saves it as a new image. The number of recorded pixels can be reduced while still obtaining an image with good quality.

- Only JPEG files captured with this camera can be resized.
- You cannot select a larger resolution than that of the original image.
- Images resized to 0.3M with this camera cannot be resized.

1. **Select an image to resize in Playback mode.**
2. **Press the four-way controller (▼).**
   The playback mode palette appears.
3. **Use the four-way controller (▲▼◄►) to select  (Resize) and press the OK button.**
   The screen to select the recorded pixels and quality level appears.
4. **Use the four-way controller (◄►) to select a size.**
   You can select one of the image sizes starting from one size smaller than that of the original image. The selectable sizes differ according to the original image size and aspect ratio.
5. **Press the four-way controller (▼) and use the four-way controller (◄►) to select the quality level.**
   You can select ★★★, ★★ or ★.
6 Press the OK button.
The save confirmation screen appears.

7 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Save as].

8 Press the OK button.
The resized image is saved as a new image.

Cutting Out Part of the Image (Cropping)

Cuts out only the desired area of the selected image and saves it as a new image. The aspect ratio can also be changed.

Caution
• Only JPEG and RAW files captured with this camera can be cropped.
• Images resized to 1M or 0.3M with this camera cannot be cropped.

1 Select an image to crop in Playback mode.

2 Press the four-way controller (▼).
The playback mode palette appears.

3 Use the four-way controller (▲▼ ◄►) to select (Cropping) and press the OK button.
The cropping frame to specify the size and position of the area to crop appears on the screen.
4 Specify the size and position of the area to crop by using cropping frame.

Available operations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>e-dial</th>
<th>Changes the size of the cropping frame.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Four-way controller (▲▼◄►)</td>
<td>Moves the cropping frame.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INFO button</td>
<td>Changes the aspect ratio. Select from [3:2], [4:3], [16:9] or [1:1]. The image can also be rotated from -45° to +45° in increments of 1°.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Green) button</td>
<td>Rotates the cropping frame in 90° increments. (Green) button appears only when the cropping frame can be rotated.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5 Press the OK button.

The save confirmation screen appears.

6 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Save as].

7 Press the OK button.

The cropped image is saved as a new image.
You can edit captured images using digital filters. The following filters are available.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Filter name</th>
<th>Effect</th>
<th>Parameter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Toy Camera</td>
<td>Creates an image that looks as though it was shot with a toy camera.</td>
<td>Shading Level: +1/+2/+3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Blur: +1/+2/+3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Tone Break: Red/Green/Blue/Yellow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Retro</td>
<td>Creates an image with the look of an old photo.</td>
<td>Toning: -3 to +3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Frame Composite: None/Thin/Medium/Thick</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High Contrast</td>
<td>Enhances the contrast in the image.</td>
<td>+1 to +5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Extract Color</td>
<td>Extracts a specific color and makes the rest of the image black and</td>
<td>Color: Red/Magenta/Blue/Cyan/Green/Yellow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>white.</td>
<td>Color Freq. Range: -2 to +2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water Color</td>
<td>Creates an image that looks as though it was painted.</td>
<td>Intensity: Weak/Standard/Strong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Saturation: Low/Medium/High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pastel</td>
<td>Creates an image that looks as though it was drawn with a crayon.</td>
<td>Weak/Standard/Strong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Miniature</td>
<td>Blurs part of the image to create a fake miniature scene.</td>
<td>Front/Middle/Back</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Base Parameter Adj</td>
<td>Adjusts the parameters to create the desired image.</td>
<td>Brightness: ±8 levels</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Saturation: ±3 levels</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Hue: ±3 levels</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Contrast: ±3 levels</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Sharpness: ±3 levels</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monochrome</td>
<td>Creates a monochrome image such as a black-and-white photo.</td>
<td>Filter Effect: OFF/Red/Green/Blue/IR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Toning (B-A): 7 levels</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Color</td>
<td>Adds a color filter to the image. Select from 18 filters (6 colors × 3</td>
<td>Color: Red/Magenta/Cyan/Blue/Green/Yellow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Filter name</td>
<td>Effect</td>
<td>Parameter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soft</td>
<td>Creates an image with a soft focus throughout the image.</td>
<td>Soft Focus: +1/+2/+3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Shadow Blur: OFF/ON</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Effect Density: Small/Medium/Large</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Size: Short/Medium/Long</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Angle: 0°/30°/45°/60°</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Star Burst</td>
<td>For taking pictures of night scenes or lights reflected on water with a special sparkling look achieved by adding cross-like effects to the picture’s highlights.</td>
<td>Effect Density: Small/Medium/Large</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Size: Short/Medium/Long</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Angle: 0°/30°/45°/60°</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fish-eye</td>
<td>Creates an image that looks as though it was shot with a fish-eye lens.</td>
<td>Weak/Medium/Strong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slim</td>
<td>Changes the horizontal and vertical ratio of images.</td>
<td>±8 levels</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HDR</td>
<td>Creates an image that looks like a high dynamic range image.</td>
<td>Weak/Standard/Strong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Custom Filter</td>
<td>Customize and save a filter to your own preferences.</td>
<td>High Contrast: OFF/+1 to +5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Soft Focus: OFF/+1/+2/+3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Tone Break: OFF/Red/Green/Blue/Yellow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Shading Type: 6 types</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Shading Level: -3 to +3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Distortion Type: 3 types</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Distortion Level: OFF/Weak/Medium/Strong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Invert Color: OFF/ON</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Only JPEG and RAW files captured with this camera can be edited using the Digital Filter.
Applying the Digital Filter

1 Select an image for applying the digital filter in Playback mode.

2 Press the four-way controller (▼).  
The playback mode palette appears.

3 Use the four-way controller (▲▼◄►) to select ① (Digital Filter) and press the OK button.  
The screen to select the filter appears.

4 Use the four-way controller (▲▼◄►) to select a filter and press the OK button.  
After selecting a filter, you can check the effects on the screen.  
You can select a different image by turning the e-dial.

5 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select the parameter and the four-way controller (◄►) to adjust the value.

6 Press the OK button.  
The save confirmation screen appears.
7 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Use filters in combination] or [Save as].

Select [Use filters in combination] when you want to apply additional filters to the same image.

8 Press the OK button.

If [Use filters in combination] was selected, the camera returns to Step 4. If [Save as] was selected, the filter-processed image is saved as a new image.

Up to 20 filters, including a digital filter used during shooting (p.140), can be combined to the same image.

Recreating Filter Effects

Retrieves the setting of an image with filter effects and apply the same filter effects to other images.

1 Select a filter-processed image in Playback mode.

2 Select [Digital Filter] in the playback mode palette.

3 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Recreating filter effects] and press the OK button.

The history of the filter set for the selected image appears.
4 **To check the parameter details, press the INFO button.**

You can check the filter parameters.

5 **Press the OK button.**

The image selection screen appears.

6 **Use the four-way controller (◄►) to select an image for applying the same filter effects and press the OK button.**

You can only select an image that has not been processed with a filter.

The save confirmation screen appears.

7 **Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Save as] and press the OK button.**

The filter-processed image is saved as a new image.
Searching for the Original Image

Searches for and displays the original image prior to digital filter application.

1 Select [Searching for the original image] in Step 3 on p.230 and press the OK button.

The original image prior to digital filter application is retrieved.

If the original image is no longer stored on the SD Memory Card, the message [Original image, prior to digital filter application, is not found] appears.
You can convert captured RAW files into JPEG files.

Caution: Only RAW files captured with this camera can be edited. RAW files and JPEG files captured with other cameras cannot be edited on this camera.

## Developing One RAW Image

1. **Select a RAW image in Playback mode.**
2. **Press the four-way controller (▼).**
   The playback mode palette appears.
3. **Use the four-way controller (▲▼◄►) to select RAW (RAW Development) and press the OK button.**
   The screen to select the development method is displayed.
4. **Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Developing Single Image] and press the OK button.**

   ![Development Options](image)

   The parameters recorded in the image file appear.
   You can select a different image by turning the e-dial.
   To specify the parameters before developing, refer to “Specifying the Parameters” (p.236).
5 Press the OK button.
The save confirmation screen appears.

6 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Save as] and press the OK button.
The RAW image is developed and saved as a new image.

7 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Exit] and press the OK button.
Select [Continue] to edit other images.

Developing Multiple RAW Images
You can develop multiple RAW images using the same settings.

1 Select [Developing Multiple Images] in Step 4 on p.233 and press the OK button.
The multi-image display screen appears.
Refer to p.204 for details on operations in the multi-image display screen.

2 Use the four-way controller (▲▼◄►) to select the RAW images to be developed and press the OK button.

3 Press the INFO button.
The development confirmation screen appears.
4 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Develop images as shot] or [Develop images with modified settings].

   To change the parameters, select [Develop images with modified settings].
   For details, refer to “Specifying the Parameters” (p. 236).
   The screen to select the parameter appears.

5 Set [Recorded Pixels] and [Quality Level].

6 Press the OK button.
   The save confirmation screen appears.

7 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Save as] and press the OK button.
   The selected RAW images are developed and saved as new images.
## Specifying the Parameters

Specify the parameters for developing RAW images. The following parameters can be changed.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Recorded Pixels</td>
<td>12M (4288×2848)/10M (3936×2624)/6M (3072×2048)/2M (1728×1152)</td>
<td>p.174</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quality Level</td>
<td>★★★ (Best) / ★★ (Better) / ★ (Good)</td>
<td>p.175</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Custom Image</td>
<td>Bright/Natural/Portrait/Landscape/Vibrant/Muted/Monochrome</td>
<td>p.194</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>White Balance*1</td>
<td>AWB (Auto)/☉ (Daylight)/☽ (Shade)/()% (Cloudy)/тели D (Fluorescent Light Daylight Color)/тели N (Fluorescent Light Daylight White)/☉ W (Fluorescent Light Cool White)/☉ L (Fluorescent Light Warm White)/☉ (Tungsten Light)/☉ (Flash)/☉ WB (Flash)/☉ CTE/☉ (Manual)</td>
<td>p.182</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sensitivity</td>
<td>-2.0 to +2.0</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High-ISO NR</td>
<td>OFF/Low/Medium/High</td>
<td>p.92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shadow Correction</td>
<td>OFF/Low/Medium/High</td>
<td>p.190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Distortion Correction*2</td>
<td>OFF/ON</td>
<td>p.192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lat-Chromatic-Ab Adj*2</td>
<td>OFF/ON</td>
<td>p.192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Color Space</td>
<td>sRGB/AdobeRGB</td>
<td>p.187</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1 This cannot be set for RAW files taken in Multi-exposure mode.

*2 This can be selected only when a compatible lens is attached. (p.192)

1. Press the four-way controller (▲▼) in Step 4 on p.233 to choose the parameter you want to change.
2 Use the four-way controller (◄ ►) to change the value. Use the four-way controller (►) to display the setting screen for White Balance and Custom Image.

3 Press the OK button. The save confirmation screen appears.

4 Use the four-way controller (▲ ▼) to select [Save as] and press the OK button. The RAW image is developed and saved as a new image.

memo
- You cannot save the background image or use Digital Preview with White Balance and Custom Image.
- When the white balance is set to 「」(Manual), press the .memo button to display the measuring screen.
Readjusting Images Shot in JPEG Format

You can readjust Custom Image and White Balance for the image shot in JPEG format immediately after shooting it without deteriorating image quality.

1. Set the file format to [JPEG] and shoot an image.
   Refer to p.177 for setting File Format.

2. Press the four-way controller (↑) to change White Balance, or press the four-way controller (▶) to change Custom Image.

3. Set White Balance or Custom Image as desired.
   Custom Image or White Balance can be set using the same procedures as before shooting.
   Refer to p.182 for setting White Balance and p.194 for setting Custom Image.

4. Press the INFO button.
   The save confirmation screen appears.

5. Use the four-way controller (▲ ▼) to select [Save as] and press the OK button.
   The image with the White Balance or Custom Image setting is saved as a new image.

Caution: The image can be readjusted only right after being shot. Adjustments cannot be made after new images are shot or the camera is turned off.
9 Changing Additional Settings

This chapter describes how to change additional settings.

How to Operate the Set-up Menu ......................... 240
Formatting an SD Memory Card .............................. 242
Setting the Beep, Date and Time, and Display Language .................................................................................. 243
Adjusting the Monitor and the Menu Display .......... 248
Setting the Folder Name/File Number Naming Convention .................................................................................. 252
Selecting the Power Settings ............................... 253
Setting the DPOF Settings ................................. 255
Setting the Photographer Information Saved to Exif .................................................................................. 257
Correcting Defective Pixels in the CMOS Sensor (Pixel Mapping) ........................................................................ 259
Selecting Settings to Save in the Camera (Memory) .................................................................................. 260
Perform various settings related to the camera in the [Set-up] menu.

For details on how to operate the menus, refer to “Using the Menus” (p.35).

### Set-up Menu Setting Items

Perform the following settings in the [Set-up 1-4] menus. Press the **MENU** button in Capture/Playback mode and use the four-way controller (左右上下) to display the [Set-up 1-4] menus.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Menu</th>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>![1]</td>
<td>Language/言語</td>
<td>Changes the language in which menus and messages appear.</td>
<td>p.247</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![1]</td>
<td>Date Adjustment</td>
<td>Sets the date format and time.</td>
<td>p.244</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![1]</td>
<td>World Time</td>
<td>Sets the display of local date and time of a specified city in addition to the present location on the monitor when traveling overseas.</td>
<td>p.244</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![1]</td>
<td>Text Size</td>
<td>Sets the size of the text selected in the menus.</td>
<td>p.248</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![1]</td>
<td>Guide Display</td>
<td>Sets whether to display indicators in the monitor.</td>
<td>p.248</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![1]</td>
<td>Beep</td>
<td>Switches the beep tone on/off.</td>
<td>p.243</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![2]</td>
<td>Brightness Level</td>
<td>Changes the brightness of the monitor.</td>
<td>p.250</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![2]</td>
<td>LCD Color Tuning</td>
<td>Adjusts the color of the monitor.</td>
<td>p.251</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![2]</td>
<td>Video Out</td>
<td>Sets the output format when connecting to an AV device with a video jack.</td>
<td>p.222</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![2]</td>
<td>USB Connection</td>
<td>Sets the USB connection mode when connecting to a computer.</td>
<td>p.265</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![2]</td>
<td>Folder Name</td>
<td>Sets the method used to assign folder names for storing images.</td>
<td>p.252</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![2]</td>
<td>Copyright Information</td>
<td>Sets the photographer and copyright information embedded in Exif.</td>
<td>p.257</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Changing Additional Settings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Menu</th>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Auto Power Off</td>
<td>Sets the time until the camera turns off automatically.</td>
<td>p.253</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Select Battery</td>
<td>Selects the type of batteries inserted in the camera.</td>
<td>p.253</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Reset</td>
<td>Resets all settings.</td>
<td>p.280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Pixel Mapping</td>
<td>Maps out and corrects any defective pixels in the CMOS sensor.</td>
<td>p.259</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dust Alert</td>
<td>Detects dust adhering to the CMOS sensor.</td>
<td>p.286</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dust Removal</td>
<td>Cleans the CMOS sensor by shaking it.</td>
<td>p.285</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sensor Cleaning</td>
<td>Locks the mirror in the up position for cleaning the CMOS sensor.</td>
<td>p.287</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Format</td>
<td>Formats the SD Memory Card.</td>
<td>p.242</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### [Set-up 1] menu

- **Language:** English
- **Date Adjustment:** World Time
- **Text Size:** Standard
- **Guide Display:** 3sec.
- **Beep:**

#### [Set-up 2] menu

- **Brightness Level:** ±0
- **LCD Color Tuning**
- **Video Out:** NTSC
- **USB Connection:** MSC
- **Folder Name:** Date
- **Copyright Information**

#### [Set-up 3] menu

- **Auto Power Off:** 1min.
- **Select Battery:** AUTO
- **Reset**

#### [Set-up 4] menu

- **Pixel Mapping**
- **Dust Alert**
- **Dust Removal**
- **Sensor Cleaning**
- **Format**
Use this camera to format (initialize) an SD Memory Card that is unused or has been used on other cameras or digital devices. Formatting deletes all the data saved on the SD Memory Card.

- Do not remove the SD Memory Card while formatting. The card may be damaged and become unusable.
- Formatting deletes all data, either protected or unprotected. Be aware.

The [Format] screen appears.

2. Press the four-way controller (▲) to select [Format].

3. Press the OK button.
Formatting starts.
When formatting is completed, the screen that was displayed before selecting the menu appears again.
Setting the Beep, Date and Time, and Display Language

Setting the Beep

You can turn the camera operation beep on or off. There are five items that you can set: In-focus, AE-L (AE lock operation sound), RAW (operation sound when [RAW Button Function] is assigned to the \( \circ \) button), Self-timer and Remote Control. The default setting is all \( \checkmark \) (On).

1. Select [Beep] in the [\( \checkmark \) Set-up 1] menu and press the four-way controller (\( \uparrow \)).

   The [Beep] screen appears.

2. Use the four-way controller (\( \uparrow \downarrow \)) to select an item and use the four-way controller (\( \leftarrow \rightarrow \)) to select \( \checkmark \) or \( \Box \).

   You can turn all the beeps off by selecting \( \Box \) for [Setting].

3. Press the MENU button twice.

   The screen that was displayed before selecting the menu appears again.
Changing the Date and Time Display

You can change the initial date and time settings. You can also set the display style. Choose [mm/dd/yy], [dd/mm/yy] or [yy/mm/dd] for the date display format, and [12h] (12 hour) or [24h] (24 hour) for the time display format.

Set in [Date Adjustment] of the [Set-up 1] menu (p.240).

Setting the Date and Time (p.56)

Setting the World Time

The date and time selected in “Initial Settings” (p.52) serve as the date and time of your present location. Setting the destination in [World Time] enables you to display the local date and time on the monitor when traveling overseas.

1 Select [World Time] in the [Set-up 1] menu and press the four-way controller (↑).

The [World Time] screen appears.

2 Use the four-way controller (← →) to select (Destination) or (Hometown) for [Setting the Time].

This setting changes the date and time on the guide display and control panel.

3 Press the four-way controller (▼).

The selection frame moves to (Destination setting).
4 Press the four-way controller (▲). The [Destination] screen appears.

5 Use the four-way controller (◄►) to select a destination city. Turn the e-dial to change the region. The location, time difference and current time of the selected city appears.

6 Press the four-way controller (▼) to select [DST].

7 Use the four-way controller (◄►) to select ☑ or ☐. Select ☑ if the destination city uses daylight saving time (DST).

8 Press the OK button. The destination setting is saved.

9 Press the MENU button twice. The screen that was displayed before selecting the menu appears again.

- Refer to “List of World Time Cities” (p.246) for cities that can be specified as a destination.
- Select ☺ (Hometown) in Step 2 to set the city and DST setting.
- ☞ appears in the guide display and control panel if [Setting the Time] is set to ☞ (Destination). (p.22)
- When you switch [Setting the Time] to ☞ (Destination), the video output (p.222) setting changes to the default setting for that city.
## List of World Time Cities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Region</th>
<th>City</th>
<th>Region</th>
<th>City</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>North America</td>
<td>Honolulu</td>
<td>Africa/</td>
<td>Dakar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Anchorage</td>
<td>West Asia</td>
<td>Algiers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Vancouver</td>
<td></td>
<td>Johannesburg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>San Francisco</td>
<td></td>
<td>Istanbul</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Los Angeles</td>
<td></td>
<td>Cairo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Calgary</td>
<td></td>
<td>Jerusalem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Denver</td>
<td></td>
<td>Nairobi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Chicago</td>
<td></td>
<td>Jeddah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Miami</td>
<td></td>
<td>Tehran</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Toronto</td>
<td></td>
<td>Dubai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>New York</td>
<td></td>
<td>Karachi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Halifax</td>
<td></td>
<td>Kabul</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Central and South</td>
<td>Mexico City</td>
<td>East Asia</td>
<td>Yangon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>America</td>
<td>Lima</td>
<td></td>
<td>Bangkok</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Santiago</td>
<td></td>
<td>Kuala Lumpur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Caracas</td>
<td></td>
<td>Vientiane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Buenos Aires</td>
<td></td>
<td>Singapore</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sao Paulo</td>
<td></td>
<td>Phnom Penh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Rio de Janeiro</td>
<td></td>
<td>Ho chi Minh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Europe</td>
<td>Lisbon</td>
<td></td>
<td>Jakarta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Madrid</td>
<td></td>
<td>Hong Kong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>London</td>
<td></td>
<td>Beijing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Paris</td>
<td></td>
<td>Shanghai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Amsterdam</td>
<td></td>
<td>Manila</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Milan</td>
<td></td>
<td>Taipei</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Rome</td>
<td></td>
<td>Seoul</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Copenhagen</td>
<td></td>
<td>Tokyo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Berlin</td>
<td></td>
<td>Tokyo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Prague</td>
<td></td>
<td>Gum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Stockholm</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Budapest</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Warsaw</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Athens</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Helsinki</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Moscow</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Changing Additional Settings

You can change the language in which the menus, error messages, etc. are displayed.
You can choose from 20 languages: English, French, German, Spanish, Portuguese, Italian, Dutch, Danish, Swedish, Finnish, Polish, Czech, Hungarian, Turkish, Greek, Russian, Korean, Chinese (Traditional/ Simplified) and Japanese.


Setting the Display Language (p.52)
Changing Additional Settings

Adjusting the Monitor and the Menu Display

Setting the Text Size

You can set the size of the text selected in the menus to [Standard] (normal display) or [Large] (magnified display).


Setting the Guide Display Time

Set the length of time that the guides are displayed on the monitor when the camera is turned on or the Capture mode is changed. (p.22)

Select from [3 sec.] (default setting), [10 sec.], [30 sec.] and [Off].


Setting the Status Screen Display

You can set the display color of the status screen and control panel.
1 Select [Status Screen] in the [Rec. Mode 3] menu and press the four-way controller (▶).
The [Status Screen] screen appears.

2 Use the four-way controller (◀ ▶) to select from the six display colors.

3 Press the MENU button twice.
The status screen display color settings are changed.

Setting the Display for Instant Review

You can set the Instant Review display time and whether or not to display the histogram and Bright/Dark Area warning. The default settings are [1 sec.] for the Instant Review display time and (Off) for the histogram and Bright/Dark Area warning.

The [Instant Review] screen appears.

2 Press the four-way controller (▶) and use the four-way controller (▲ ▼) to select a display time.
**Changing Additional Settings**

1. **Select [Brightness Level] in the [Set-up 2] menu and press the four-way controller (►).**
   
   The [Brightness Level] screen appears.

2. **Use the four-way controller (<<<<) to adjust the brightness.**
   
   You can select from 15 brightness levels.

3. **Press the OK button.**

4. **Press the MENU button.**
   
   The screen that was displayed before selecting the menu appears again.

---

**Adjusting the Brightness of the Monitor**

You can adjust the brightness of the monitor. Adjust the settings when the monitor is hard to see.

1. **Select [Brightness Level] in the [Set-up 2] menu and press the four-way controller (►).**
   
   The [Brightness Level] screen appears.

2. **Use the four-way controller (<<<<) to adjust the brightness.**

   You can select from 15 brightness levels.

3. **Press the OK button.**

4. **Press the MENU button.**
   
   The screen that was displayed before selecting the menu appears again.
Adjusting the Color of the Monitor

You can adjust the color of the monitor.

1. **Select [LCD Color Tuning] in the [ Set-up 2] menu and press the four-way controller ( ).**
   The [LCD Color Tuning] screen appears.

2. **Adjust the color.**
   Seven levels (225 patterns) are available on the G-M and B-A axes.

   **Available operations**
   - Four-way controller (▲▼) Adjusts the tone of the colors between green (G) and magenta (M).
   - Four-way controller (◄►) Adjusts the tone of the colors between blue (B) and amber (A).
   - (Green) button Resets the adjustment value.
   - e-dial Displays a saved image in the background so you can adjust the color while viewing the image. This is useful for matching the color of the monitor with that of a computer.

3. **Press the OK button.**

4. **Press the MENU button.**
   The screen that was displayed before selecting the menu appears again.
252

Setting the Folder Name/File Number
Naming Convention
Selecting the Folder Name
You can select a method for assigning the folder names for storing images.

Date

PENTX

The two digits of the month and day on which the picture was taken
are assigned as the folder name in the form of [xxx_MMDD]. [xxx] is
a sequential number from 100 to 999. [MMDD] (month and day)
appears according to the display style set in [Date Adjustment]
(p.244). (default setting)
Example) 101_0125: Folder for pictures taken on January 25th
The folder name is assigned in the form of [xxxPENTX].
Example) 101PENTX

Set in [Folder Name] of the [R Set-up 2]
menu (p.240).

1 2 3 4

Brightness Level
LCD Color Tuning
Video Out
USB Connection
Folder Name
Copyright Information
MENU Cancel

±0
NTSC
MSC
Date
PENTX
IMGP
OK OK

Selecting the File Number Setting
9
Changing Additional Settings

You can select a method for assigning the file number of an image when
saved to a new folder. Select O or P for [File No.] in [Memory] (p.260) of
O

The file number of the last image saved to the previous folder is saved
and subsequent images are assigned sequential file numbers even if
a new folder is created.

P

The file number of the first image saved to a folder returns to 0001
each time a new folder is created for saving images.
When the number of storable images exceeds 500, captured images are
divided into folders of 500 images each. However, in Exposure Bracketing
shooting, images will be stored in the same folder until shooting is completed,
even if the number of images exceeds 500.


**Selecting the Power Settings**

**Setting Auto Power Off**

You can set the camera to turn off automatically if unused after a certain length of time. Select from [1 min.] (default setting), [3 min.], [5 min.], [10 min.], [30 min.] or [Off].


The Auto Power Off function does not work in the following situations.
- When the Live View is displayed
- When the slideshow is played back
- When the camera is connected to a computer with the USB cable

**Setting the Battery Type**

Sets the type of batteries used in the camera. The default setting is [Auto-detect].

1. **Select [Select Battery] in the [Set-up 3] menu and press the four-way controller (►).**

   The [Select Battery] screen appears.
2 **Use the four-way controller (▲ ▼) to select the type of batteries.**

When set to [Auto-detect], the camera will automatically detect the type of batteries being used.

![Select Battery Menu]

3 **Press the OK button.**

4 **Press the MENU button twice.**

The screen that was displayed before selecting the menu appears again.

![Battery Type Selection]

**Caution:**

When a type of batteries different from that selected in the menu setting is used, the battery level will not be correctly determined. Please set the correct battery type. Usually, there is no problem using [Auto-detect]. However in low temperatures and when using batteries that were stored for long periods of time, set the appropriate battery type so the camera can correctly determine the remaining battery level.

---

**Setting the Operation of the Power Lamp**

Sets the operation of the power lamp from [Standard] (default setting), [Low] or [Off].


![Power Lamp Menu]

**Memo:**

Even if the power lamp is set to [Off], the lamp lights up while the camera is transferring data to a computer when connected using the USB cable.
Setting the DPOF Settings

You can order conventional photograph prints by taking the SD Memory Card with recorded images to a store for printing. DPOF (Digital Print Order Format) settings allow you to specify the number of copies and whether to imprint the date.

- DPOF settings cannot be applied to RAW images.
- You can make DPOF settings for up to 999 images.

1. Press the four-way controller (▼) in Playback mode.
The playback mode palette appears.

2. Use the four-way controller (▲ ▼ ◄ ►) to select DPOF (DPOF) and press the OK button.
The screen to select how to change the settings is displayed.

3. Use the four-way controller (▲ ▼) to select [Single Image] or [All Images] and press the OK button.

4. When [Single Image] is selected in Step 3, use the four-way controller (◄ ►) to select an image to set DPOF settings.

5. Use the four-way controller (▲ ▼) to select the number of copies.
   You can set up to 99 copies.
6 **Turn the e-dial to select ☑ or ☐ for printing the date.**

☑: The date will be printed.
☐: The date will not be printed.

Repeat Steps 4 to 6 to set other images (up to 999).

7 **Press the OK button.**

The DPOF settings for the selected image is saved and the camera returns to Playback mode.

- Depending on the printer or printing equipment at the photo processing lab, the date may not be printed on the pictures even if the date for DPOF setting is set to ☑.
- The number of copies specified in settings for all images applies to all the images and the settings for single images are canceled. Before printing, check that the number is correct.

To cancel DPOF settings, set the number of copies to [00] in Step 5 and press the OK button.
Setting the Photographer Information Saved to Exif

The camera type, shooting conditions and other information are automatically embedded in captured images in the Exif data format. You can embed photographer information in this Exif.

1. Select [Copyright Information] in the [Set-up 2] menu and press the four-way controller (►).

The [Copyright Information] screen appears.

2. Use the four-way controller (◄ ►) to select ✔ or □.

   ✔: Embeds copyright information in the Exif.

   □: Does not embed copyright information in the Exif. (default setting)

3. Use the four-way controller (▲ ▼) to select [Photographer] and press the four-way controller (►).

The text-entry screen appears.

Use the provided “PENTAX Digital Camera Utility 4” software to check the Exif information.
4 Enter the text.

Available operations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operation</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>e-dial</td>
<td>Moves the text input cursor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Four-way controller</td>
<td>Moves the text selection cursor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Green) button</td>
<td>Switches between upper and lower case letters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OK button</td>
<td>Enters a character selected with the text selection cursor at the position of the text input cursor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UP/ down button</td>
<td>Deletes a character at the position of the text input cursor.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5 After entering the text, move the text selection cursor to [Finish] and press the OK button.

The camera returns to the [Copyright Information] screen.

6 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Copyright Holder] and enter the text in the same way as [Photographer].

7 Press the MENU button twice.

The screen that was displayed before selecting the menu appears again.
Correcting Defective Pixels in the CMOS Sensor (Pixel Mapping)

Pixel Mapping is the function for mapping out and correcting defective pixels in the CMOS sensor.

1  Select [Pixel Mapping] in the [\ Set-up 4] menu.

2  Press the four-way controller (▶).

3  Press the four-way controller (▲) to select [Pixel Mapping] and press the OK button.
Defective pixels are mapped and corrected, and the screen that was displayed before selecting the menu appears again.

Caution: When the battery level is low, [Not enough battery power remaining to activate Pixel Mapping] is displayed on the monitor. Use the AC adapter kit K-AC84 (optional) or change batteries with ample power remaining.
Selecting Settings to Save in the Camera (Memory)

You can select which function settings to save when the camera is turned off. The following function settings can be saved.

- Flash Mode
- Drive Mode
- White Balance
- Sensitivity
- EV Compensation
- Flash Exposure Compensation
- Cross Processing
- Digital Filter
- HDR Capture
- Shooting Info Display
- Playback Info Display
- File number

The default setting is ✓ for all functions except Cross Processing, Digital Filter, HDR Capture and Shooting Info Display.


3. Use the four-way controller (▲ ▼) to choose an item.
   Turn the e-dial to display the [Memory 2] screen.

4. Use the four-way controller (◄ ►) to select ✓ or □.
   ✓: Settings are saved even when the camera is turned off.
   □: Settings are cleared and returned to their default values when the camera is turned off.

5. Press the MENU button twice.
   The screen that was displayed before selecting the menu appears again.
• Set [File No.] to ✓ to continue the sequential numbering for the file name even if a new folder is created. Refer to “Selecting the File Number Setting” (p.252).
• When the [Set-up] menu is reset (p.280), all Memory settings return to the default values.
• If [Shooting Info Display] is set to ◯, the status screen is always displayed first when the camera is turned on.
10 Connecting to a Computer

This chapter explains how to connect the camera to your computer, install the supplied CD-ROM, etc.

Using Captured Images on a Computer ............ 264
Saving Images on Your Computer ................. 265
Using the Provided Software .......................... 268
The captured still pictures and movies can be transferred to a computer by connecting the *K-x* using a USB cable and can be managed using the provided software.

We recommend the following system requirements to connect your camera to a computer or to use the software “PENTAX Digital Camera Utility 4” included in the CD-ROM (S-SW99).

### Windows

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Requirement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>OS</strong></td>
<td>Computer with Windows XP (Home Edition/Professional/x64 Edition) SP2 or later, or Windows Vista preinstalled. <em>With Windows 2000, you can only transfer images from your camera using a USB cable.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>CPU</strong></td>
<td>Pentium 4 or higher (Intel Core Processor or higher recommended)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>RAM</strong></td>
<td>1.0 GB or more (2.0 GB or more recommended. For Windows Vista, 3.0 GB or more recommended)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Free Disk Space</strong></td>
<td>1.0 GB or more (2.0 GB or more recommended)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Monitor</strong></td>
<td>1280×1024 pixels or more with 24-bit full color (approximately 16.77 million colors)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Others</strong></td>
<td>USB 2.0 port must be standard equipment</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Macintosh

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Requirement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>OS</strong></td>
<td>Macintosh with Mac OS X 10.3.9, 10.4, or 10.5 preinstalled. <em>With Mac OS X 10.2, you can only transfer images from your camera using a USB cable.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>CPU</strong></td>
<td>PowerPC G5 or higher (Intel Core processor recommended. Universal Binary format)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>RAM</strong></td>
<td>1.0 GB or more (2.0 GB or more recommended)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Free Disk Space</strong></td>
<td>1.0 GB or more (2.0 GB or more recommended)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Monitor</strong></td>
<td>1280×1024 pixels or more with 24-bit full color (approximately 16.77 million colors)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Others</strong></td>
<td>USB 2.0 port must be standard equipment, QuickTime 7.0 or later</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Setting USB Connection Mode

Set the USB connection mode when connecting to a computer via the provided USB cable (I-USB7). The default setting is [MSC].


2. Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [MSC] or [PTP].

3. Press the OK button.
   The setting is changed.

4. Press the MENU button.
   The screen that was displayed before selecting the menu appears again.
MSC and PTP

MSC (Mass Storage Class)
A general-purpose driver program that handles devices connected to the computer via USB as a memory device. Also indicates a standard for controlling USB devices with this driver. By simply connecting a device that supports USB Mass Storage Class, you can copy, read, and write files from a computer without installing a dedicated driver.

PTP (Picture Transfer Protocol)
A protocol that allows transfer of digital images and control of digital cameras via USB, standardized as ISO 15740. You can transfer image data between devices that support PTP without installing a device driver.

Unless otherwise specified, select MSC when connecting the K-\(\chi\) to your computer.

Saving Images by Connecting Your Camera and Your Computer

1 Turn your computer on.

2 Turn off your camera and use the provided USB cable to connect your camera and your computer.
3 **Turn your camera on.**

The camera is recognized as a [Removable Disk] in [My Computer] for Windows.

For Macintosh, an icon for the SD Memory Card appears on the desktop.

- If the [Removable Disk Drive] dialog appears when the camera is turned on, select [Open folder to view files using Windows Explorer] and click the OK button.
- When using Windows XP, if the SD Memory Card has a volume label, the volume label name appears instead of [Removable Disk]. A new unformatted SD Memory Card may show the manufacturer’s name or model number.

4 **Save the captured images to your computer.**

Drag and drop the image file(s) or the folder containing the image files in your camera to the hard disk of your computer or the desktop.

5 **Disconnect your camera from your computer.**
“PENTAX Digital Camera Utility 4” is included in the CD-ROM (S-SW99). Using the PENTAX Digital Camera Utility 4, you can manage images saved on your computer and develop (process) and adjust the color of RAW files taken with the K- χ.

Compatible file formats: .bmp (BMP)/.jpg (JPEG)/.pef (files recorded in PENTAX’s original RAW format)/.pct (PICT)/.png (PNG)/.tif (TIFF)/.dng (DNG format RAW file)

Installing the Software

You can install the software from the provided CD-ROM. When multiple accounts have been setup on your computer, log on with an account that has administrative rights before installing the software.

1. **Turn your computer on.**
   Close any other software that is open.

2. **Place the CD-ROM (S-SW99) into the CD-ROM drive on your computer.**
   The [PENTAX Software Installer] screen appears.

   **If the [PENTAX Software Installer] screen does not appear**
   - **For Windows**
     1. Click [My Computer] from the Start menu.
     2. Double-click the [CD-ROM drive (S-SW99)] icon.
     3. Double-click the [Setup.exe] icon.
   - **For Macintosh**
     1. Double-click the CD-ROM (S-SW99) icon on the desktop.
     2. Double-click the [PENTAX Installer] icon.
3 Click [PENTAX Digital Camera Utility 4].
For Windows, proceed to Step 4.
For Macintosh, follow the instructions on the screen to perform subsequent steps.

4 Select the desired language in the [Choose Setup Language] screen and click [OK].

5 When the [InstallShield Wizard] screen appears in the selected language, click [Next].
Follow the instructions on the screen to perform subsequent steps.
When PENTAX Digital Camera Utility 4 is launched, the following screen (browser) appears.

The screenshots used in this explanation are for Windows.

The Browser tab set (default setting)
You can perform the file management functions such as viewing and managing the images.

1. **Menu Bar**
   This executes functions or sets various settings.
   For Macintosh, the Menu bar appears at the top of the desktop.

2. **Tool Bar**
   Frequently used functions are provided as Tool bar buttons.
3 Control Panel
The shooting information and settings for the selected image appear in this panel. You can switch the panel tab sets by pressing the Browser, Laboratory and Custom buttons on the Tool bar.

4 File Display Pane
The file list or the images in the selected folder appear here.

5 Status Bar
Information on the selected item appears.

The Laboratory tab set (default setting)
The control panel for adjusting the image appears here.
The Custom tab set (default setting)
The screen display can be customized here. The Custom tab sets
enable you to customize whether to show/hide the various tab pages in
accordance with your needs. With the default settings, all control panels
are displayed.

Viewing Detailed Information on the Software
Refer to Help for details on using the software program.

1 Click the button on the Tool bar.
Or, select [PENTAX Digital Camera Utility Help] from the [Help] menu.
Regarding Product Registration

To better serve you, please take a moment to register your software.

Click [Product Registration] on the screen in Step 3 on p.269.

A world map for Internet Product Registration is displayed. If your computer is connected to the Internet, click the displayed country or region and then follow the instructions to register your software.
Memo
Appendix

Default Settings ..................................................276
Functions Available with Various Lens Combinations .....................................................282
Cleaning the CMOS Sensor ..................................................285
Optional Accessories ........................................289
Error Messages ..................................................293
Troubleshooting .................................................295
Main Specifications ............................................298
Glossary ..............................................................302
Index ....................................................................307
WARRANTY POLICY ..........................................313
Default Settings

The table below shows the factory default settings. The functions set in Memory (p.260) are saved even when the camera is turned off.

Reset Setting
Yes: The setting returns to the default setting with the reset function (p.280).
No: The setting is saved even after reset.

Direct Keys

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Default Setting</th>
<th>Reset Setting</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Drive Mode</td>
<td>(Single Frame Shooting)</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>p.109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>p.131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>p.134</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>p.136</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flash Mode</td>
<td>Depends on Capture mode</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>p.67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>White Balance</td>
<td>AWB (Auto)</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>p.182</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sensitivity</td>
<td>AUTO (ISO 200 - 1600)</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>p.90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Select AF Point</td>
<td>(5 AF Points)</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>p.117</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

[Rec. Mode] Menu

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Default Setting</th>
<th>Reset Setting</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Custom Image</td>
<td>Bright</td>
<td>Yes*¹</td>
<td>p.194</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>File Format</td>
<td>JPEG</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>p.177</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JPEG Recorded Pixels</td>
<td>12M (4288×2848)</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>p.174</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JPEG Quality</td>
<td>⭐⭐⭐ (Best)</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>p.175</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D-Range Setting</td>
<td>Highlight Correction (Off)</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>p.189</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Shadow Correction Off</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>p.190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lens Correction</td>
<td>Distortion Correction (Off)</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>p.192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Lat-Chromatic-Ab Adj (Off)</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>p.192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cross Processing</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>p.196</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Digital Filter</td>
<td>Not use any filters</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>p.140</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HDR Capture</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>p.191</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Item</td>
<td>Default Setting</td>
<td>Reset Setting</td>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Multi-exposure</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of Shots</td>
<td>2times</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>p.138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auto EV Adjustment</td>
<td>□  (Off)</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>AF Mode</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>AF.A</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>p.115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>AE Metering</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(Multi-segment)</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>p.104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Select AF Point</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(5 AF Points)</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>p.117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Movie</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recorded Pixels</td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quality Level</td>
<td>★★★ (Best)</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sound</td>
<td>□  (On)</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Movie Aperture Control</td>
<td>Fixed</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shake Reduction</td>
<td>(Off)</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Live View</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Info Overlay</td>
<td>□  (On)</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Show Grid</td>
<td>□  (Off)</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Histogram</td>
<td>□  (Off)</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bright/Dark Area</td>
<td>□  (Off)</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Autofocus Mode</td>
<td>(Face Detection AF)</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Status Screen</strong></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>p.248</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Instant Review</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Display Time</td>
<td>1 sec.</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Histogram</td>
<td>□  (Off)</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>p.249</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bright/Dark Area</td>
<td>□  (Off)</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Color Space</strong></td>
<td>sRGB</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>p.187</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>RAW File Format</strong></td>
<td>PEF</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>p.178</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Green Button</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Green Button</td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Custom Image *2</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optical Preview *2</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Digital Preview *2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Histogram</td>
<td>□  (Off)</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bright/Dark Area</td>
<td>□  (Off)</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Digital Filter *2</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RAW Button Function *2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cancel after 1 shot</td>
<td>(On)</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JPEG → RAW+</td>
<td>JPEG → RAW+</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Center AF Point *2</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Action in M Mode</strong></td>
<td>P LINE</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>p.102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e-dial in Program</td>
<td>P SHIFT</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>p.95</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Playback Mode Palette

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Default Setting</th>
<th>Reset Setting</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Image Rotation</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>p.213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Digital Filter</td>
<td>Toy Camera</td>
<td>Yes*</td>
<td>p.227</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resize</td>
<td>Maximum size according to the setting</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>p.224</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cropping</td>
<td>Maximum size according to the setting</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>p.225</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slideshow</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>p.211</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RAW Development</td>
<td>File Format: JPEG</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>p.233</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Index</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>p.207</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Image Comparison</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>p.214</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Protect</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>p.219</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DPOF</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>p.255</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* The parameters specified in [Digital Filter] are also reset.

## [Playback] Menu

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Default Setting</th>
<th>Reset Setting</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Slideshow</td>
<td>Interval</td>
<td>3 sec.</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Screen Effect</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Repeat Playback</td>
<td>□ (Off)</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Playback Display Method</td>
<td>Bright/Dark Area</td>
<td>□ (Off)</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Quick Zoom</td>
<td>□ (Off)</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## [🔧 Set-up] Menu

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Default Setting</th>
<th>Reset Setting</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Delete All Images</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>p.218</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Default Setting</th>
<th>Reset Setting</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Language/言語</strong></td>
<td>According to default setting</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>p.247</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Date Adjustment</td>
<td>According to default setting</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>p.244</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>World Time</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>p.244</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>World Time setting</td>
<td>☁ (Hometown)</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hometown (City)</td>
<td>According to default setting</td>
<td>No</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hometown (DST)</td>
<td>According to default setting</td>
<td>No</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination (City)</td>
<td>Same as Hometown</td>
<td>No</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destination (DST)</td>
<td>Same as Hometown</td>
<td>No</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Text Size</td>
<td>According to default setting</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>p.248</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guide Display</td>
<td>3 sec.</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>p.248</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beep</td>
<td>All ☑ (On)</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>p.243</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brightness Level</td>
<td>±0</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>p.250</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LCD Color Tuning</td>
<td>±0</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>p.251</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Video Out</td>
<td>According to default setting</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>p.222</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USB Connection</td>
<td>MSC</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>p.265</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Folder Name</td>
<td>Date</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>p.252</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Copyright Information</strong></td>
<td>Embed Copyright Data ☐ (Off)</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>p.257</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Photographer</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>No</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Copyright Holder</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>No</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auto Power Off</td>
<td>1 min.</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>p.253</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Select Battery</td>
<td>Auto-detect</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>p.253</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reset</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>p.280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pixel Mapping</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>p.259</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dust Alert</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>p.286</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dust Removal</td>
<td>Dust Removal</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>p.285</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Start-up Action</td>
<td>☐ (Off)</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sensor Cleaning</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>p.287</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Format</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>p.242</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### [C Custom Setting] Menu

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Default Setting</th>
<th>Reset Setting</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. EV Steps</td>
<td>1/3 EV Steps</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>p.108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Sensitivity Steps</td>
<td>1 EV Step</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>p.90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Expanded Sensitivity</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>p.91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Meter Operating Time</td>
<td>10 sec.</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>p.106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. AE-L with AF Locked</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>p.120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Link AE to AF Point</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>p.106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Auto Bracketing Order</td>
<td>0 - +</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>p.110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. WB When Using Flash</td>
<td>Auto White Balance</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>p.183</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. AWB in Tungsten Light</td>
<td>Subtle Correction</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. AF/AE-L Button</td>
<td>Enable AF1</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>p.108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>p.114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. AF with Remote Control</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>p.135</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. Remote Control in Bulb</td>
<td>Mode1</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>p.104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. Slow Shutter Speed NR</td>
<td>On</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>p.92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. High-ISO NR</td>
<td>Medium</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>p.92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. High-ISO NR Start Level</td>
<td>ISO 800</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>p.92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16. Release While Charging</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>p.73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17. Flash in Wireless Mode</td>
<td>On</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>p.166</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18. Saving Rotation Info</td>
<td>On</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>p.213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19. Auto Image Rotation</td>
<td>On</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>p.213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20. Power lamp</td>
<td>Standard</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>p.254</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21. Catch-in Focus</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>p.123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22. Using Aperture Ring</td>
<td>Prohibited</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>p.284</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reset Custom Functions</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>p.281</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Resetting the Menu

#### Resetting Rec. Mode/Playback/Set-up Menu

Settings in the [Rec. Mode] menu, [Playback] menu, [Set-up] menu, direct keys and playback mode palette can be reset to default settings.
Select [Reset] in the [Set-up 3] menu and press the four-way controller (▶).
The [Reset] screen appears.

Press the four-way controller (▲) to select [Reset] and press the OK button.
The settings are reset, and the screen that was displayed before selecting the menu appears again.

Resetting the Custom Menu
Reset settings in [C Custom Setting] menu to default values.

Select [Reset Custom Functions] in the [C Custom Setting 4] menu and press the four-way controller (▶).
The [Reset Custom Functions] screen appears.

Press the four-way controller (▲) to select [Reset] and press the OK button.
The settings are reset, and the screen that was displayed before selecting the menu appears again.
Functions Available with Various Lens Combinations

Only DA, DA L and FA J lenses and D FA/FA/F/A lenses which have an A (Auto) position on the aperture ring can be used with factory default settings. Refer to “Notes on [22. Using Aperture Ring]” (p.284) for other lenses and D FA/FA/F/A lenses with aperture ring set to a position other than A.

✔ : Functions are available when the aperture ring is set to the A position.
# : Some functions are restricted.
× : Functions are unavailable.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Autofocus (Lens only)</td>
<td></td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(With AF adapter 1.7×)*1</td>
<td></td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>#7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>✔</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual focus</td>
<td></td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(With the focus indicator)*2</td>
<td></td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(With matte field)</td>
<td></td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quick-Shift Focus System</td>
<td></td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Five AF points/Eleven AF points</td>
<td></td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multi-segment metering</td>
<td></td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P (Program) mode</td>
<td></td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sv (Sensitivity Priority) mode</td>
<td></td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tv (Shutter Priority) mode</td>
<td></td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Av (Aperture Priority) mode</td>
<td></td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M (Manual) mode</td>
<td></td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P-TTL Auto Flash*3</td>
<td></td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Power Zoom</td>
<td></td>
<td>–</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatic obtaining the lens focal length information when using the Shake Reduction function</td>
<td></td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lens Correction function*4</td>
<td></td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td>×</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1: Requires an adapter for 1.7× magnification
*2: Requires a matte field adapter
*3: Requires an adapter
*4: Requires an adapter
*5: Can only be used if the focus mode is set to AF
*6: Available only when KAF3 is used with FA J lenses
*7: Available only when KAF2 is used with FA J lenses
*8: Available only when K is used with FA J lenses
*1 Lenses with a maximum aperture of f/2.8 or brighter. Only available at the A position.
*2 Lenses with a maximum aperture of f/5.6 or brighter.
*3 When using the built-in flash and AF540FGZ, AF360FGZ, AF200FG or AF160FC.
*4 Aberration correction is available in [Lens Correction] of the [Rec. Mode 1] menu. The [Distortion Correction] setting is disabled when using a DA 10-17mm FISH-EYE lens.
*5 Only available with compatible lenses.
*6 To use an F/FA SOFT 85 mm f/2.8 lens or FA SOFT 28 mm f/2.8 lens, set [22. Using Aperture Ring] in the [Custom Setting 4] menu to [Permitted]. Pictures can be taken with the aperture you set, but only within manual aperture range.
*7 The AF point is fixed to [Spot].
*8 Av (Aperture Priority) Automatic Exposure with the aperture open. (Adjusting the aperture ring has no effect on the actual aperture value.)

**Lens names and mount names**

DA lenses with an ultrasonic motor and FA zoom lenses with power zoom use the KAF2 mount. DA lenses with ultrasonic motor and no AF coupler use the KAF3 mount.
FA prime lenses (non-zoom lenses), DA or DA L lenses without ultrasonic motors and D FA, FA J and F lenses use the KAF mount.
Refer to the lens manual for details. Note that this camera is not equipped with a power zoom function.

**Lenses and accessories that cannot be used with this camera**

When the aperture ring is set to other than the A (Auto) position or a lens without an A position or accessories such as an auto extension tube or auto bellows are used, the camera will not operate unless [22. Using Aperture Ring] is set to [Permitted] in the [Custom Setting 4] menu. Refer to “Notes on [22. Using Aperture Ring]” (p.284) for restrictions that apply.
All camera capture modes are available when using DA/DA L/FA J or lenses with an aperture A position set to the A position.

**Lens and Built-in Flash**

The built-in flash cannot be regulated and fully discharges when A lenses not set to the A (Auto) position, pre A lenses or soft focus lenses are used. Note that the built-in flash cannot be used as an Auto Flash.
Notes on [22. Using Aperture Ring]

When [22. Using Aperture Ring] is set to [Permitted] in the [C Custom Setting 4] menu, the shutter can be released even if the aperture ring of the D FA, FA, F or A lens is not set to the A (Auto) position or a lens without an A position is attached. However, the features will be restricted as shown below.

Restrictions on using lenses with aperture ring set to a position other than A

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lens Used</th>
<th>Exposure Mode</th>
<th>Restriction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>D FA, FA, F, A, M (lens only or with auto diaphragm accessories such as auto extension tube K)</td>
<td>Av (Aperture Priority) mode</td>
<td>The aperture remains open regardless of the aperture ring position. The shutter speed changes in relation to the open aperture but an exposure error may occur. In the viewfinder, [F--] appears for the aperture indicator.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D FA, FA, F, A, M, S (with diaphragm accessories such as extension tube K)</td>
<td>Av (Aperture Priority) mode</td>
<td>Pictures can be taken with the specified aperture value but an exposure error may occur. In the viewfinder, [F--] appears for the aperture indicator.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual diaphragm lens such as reflex lens (lens only)</td>
<td>Av (Aperture Priority) mode</td>
<td>Pictures can be taken with the specified aperture value in the manual aperture range. In the viewfinder, [F--] appears for the aperture indicator. When the depth of field is checked (Optical Preview), exposure metering starts and the exposure can be checked.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FA, F SOFT 85mm, FA SOFT 28mm (lens only)</td>
<td>Av (Aperture Priority) mode</td>
<td>Pictures can be taken with the set aperture value and shutter speed. In the viewfinder, [F--] appears for the aperture indicator. When the depth of field is checked (Optical Preview), exposure metering starts and the exposure can be checked.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All lenses</td>
<td>M (Manual) mode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The camera operates in Av (Aperture Priority) mode regardless of the mode dial setting other than M (Manual) mode when the aperture is set to other than the A position.
Cleaning the CMOS Sensor

Shadows may appear in the image on white backgrounds and other shooting conditions if the CMOS sensor becomes dirty or dusty. This indicates that the CMOS sensor must be cleaned.

Removing Dust by Shaking the CMOS Sensor (Dust Removal)

Shaking the CMOS sensor removes dust that has collected.

1. **Select [Dust Removal] in the [Set-up 4] menu and press the four-way controller ( ).**
   The [Dust Removal] screen appears.

2. **Press the OK button.**
   The Dust Removal function is activated by shaking the CMOS sensor.
   To activate the Dust Removal function every time the camera is turned on, select [Start-up Action] and use the four-way controller ( ) to select ✔.
   When Dust Removal is completed, the camera returns to the [Set-up 4] menu.
 Detecting Dust on the CMOS Sensor (Dust Alert)

Dust Alert is the function that detects dust adhering to the CMOS sensor and visually displays the location of the dust. You can save the detected image and display it when performing sensor cleaning (p.287).

The following conditions must be met before using the Dust Alert function:

- A DA, DA L, FA J lens or a D FA, FA and F lens that has an Aperture A (Auto) position is attached.
- The aperture is set to the A position when using a lens with an aperture ring.
- The mode dial is set to any mode other than (Movie).
- The focus mode lever is set to AF.

   The [Dust Alert] screen appears.

2. Fully display a white wall or uniformly bright subject in the viewfinder and press the shutter release button fully.
   After image processing is performed, the Dust Alert image appears.
   If the message [The operation could not be completed correctly] is displayed, press the OK button and take another picture.

3. Press the OK button.
   The image is saved and the camera returns to the [Set-up 4] menu.
Appendix 11

Raise the mirror up and open the shutter when cleaning the CMOS sensor with a blower.

Please contact PENTAX Service Center for professional cleaning because the CMOS sensor is a precision part. Cleaning services involve a fee.

You can use the optional Imagesensor Cleaning kit O-ICK1 (p.292) when cleaning the CMOS sensor.

- The exposure time may be extremely long when using the Dust Alert function. Note that if the direction of the lens is changed before processing is complete, dust will not be detected properly.
- Depending on the subject conditions or temperature, dust may not be detected properly.
- The Dust Alert image can only be displayed during sensor cleaning within 30 minutes from the time the image is saved. If 30 minutes elapse, save a new Dust Alert image and then perform sensor cleaning.
- The saved Dust Alert image cannot be displayed in Playback mode.
- The Dust Alert image cannot be saved when an SD Memory Card is not inserted.

- Regardless of the camera settings, the Dust Alert image will be taken with specific shooting conditions.
- Press the INFO button or turn the e-dial when the Dust Alert image is displayed to view it at full screen display.

Removing Dust with a Blower

Raise the mirror up and open the shutter when cleaning the CMOS sensor with a blower.

Please contact PENTAX Service Center for professional cleaning because the CMOS sensor is a precision part. Cleaning services involve a fee.

You can use the optional Imagesensor Cleaning kit O-ICK1 (p.292) when cleaning the CMOS sensor.

- Do not use a spray type blower.
- Do not clean the sensor when the shutter speed is set to Bulb.
- Always cap the lens mount area to prevent dirt and dust from accumulating on the CMOS sensor when no lens is on the camera.
- When the battery level is low, the message [Not enough battery power remaining to clean sensor] is displayed on the monitor.
- It is recommended to use the AC adapter kit K-AC84 (optional) when cleaning the sensor. If you are not using the AC adapter kit K-AC84 (optional), please change batteries with ample power remaining. If the battery capacity becomes low during cleaning, a warning beep will sound. Please stop cleaning immediately.
- Do not put the tip of the blower inside the lens mount area. If the power is turned off, this may cause damage to the shutter, CMOS sensor or the mirror.
1 Turn the camera off and remove the lens.

2 Turn the camera on.


4 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Mirror Up] and press the OK button.

   The mirror is locked in the up position. If you used Dust Alert to detect dust on the sensor within the last 30 minutes, the Dust Alert image appears on the monitor. Clean the sensor while checking the location of the dust.

5 Clean the CMOS sensor.

   Use a brush-less blower to remove dirt and dust from the CMOS sensor. Using a blower with a brush may scratch the CMOS sensor. Do not wipe the CMOS sensor with a cloth.

6 Turn off the camera.

7 Attach the lens after the mirror returns to its original position.

- The self-timer lamp blinks while cleaning the sensor.
- This camera features a CMOS sensor shifting shake reduction system, and it may generate a vibration sound while cleaning the CMOS sensor. It is not a malfunction.
Optional Accessories

A number of dedicated accessories are available for this camera. Please contact a PENTAX Service Center for details regarding accessories. Products marked with an asterisk (*) are the same as those supplied with the camera.

### Power Supply Accessories

**AC Adapter kit K-AC84**
(Set includes AC ADAPTER D-AC76, DC COUPLER D-DC84 and AC plug cord.)
Lets you power your camera from an AC outlet.

### Flash Accessories

**Auto Flash AF540FGZ**
**Auto Flash AF360FGZ**
The AF540FGZ and AF360FGZ are P-TTL auto flash units with a maximum guide number of 54 and 36 (ISO 100/m), respectively. Their features include slave-sync flash, contrast-control-sync flash, high-speed sync flash, wireless flash, slow-speed sync and trailing curtain sync flash.
Auto Flash AF200FG
The AF200FG is a P-TTL auto flash unit with a maximum guide number of 20 (ISO 100/m). It features contrast-control-sync flash and slow-speed sync flash when combined with an AF540FGZ or AF360FGZ unit.

Auto Macro Flash AF160FC
The AF160FC is a flash system especially designed for macro photography to take close, shadowless pictures of small objects. It is compatible with existing TTL auto flash functions and it can be used with a wide range of PENTAX cameras by using the provided adapter rings.

Hot Shoe Adapter FG
Extension Cord F5P

Off-Camera Shoe Adapter F
Use the adapters and cords to use the external flash away from the camera.

Off-camera Shoe Clip CL-10
When using the AF540FGZ or AF360FGZ as a wireless flash, this large clip is used for setting the external flash on a desk or table.
For Viewfinder

**Magnifier FB**
This viewfinder accessory is for magnifying the central area of the viewfinder 2×. You can see the entire view by simply flipping up the accessory from the eyepiece, as it is a hinge-type magnifier.

**Ref-converter A**
This is an accessory that changes the viewfinder viewing angle at 90° intervals. The viewfinder magnification can be switched between 1× and 2×.

**Diopter correction lens adapter M**
This accessory adjusts the diopter. Install it on the viewfinder. If it is difficult to see the viewfinder image clearly, choose one of the eight correction of approximately –5 to +3 m⁻¹ (per meter).

**Eyecup Fq (*)**

**Remote Control F**
Lets you shoot pictures from within 4 m of the front of the camera.
Camera Case/Strap

Camera Case O-CC84
Camera Strap O-ST53 (*)

Imagesensor Cleaning Kit O-ICK1

Use this kit to clean the optical parts such as the CMOS sensor and lens of this camera.

Others

Body Mount Cap K
Hot Shoe Cover Fk (*)
USB Cable I-USB7 (*)
AV Cable I-AVC7
### Error Messages

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Error Message</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Memory card full          | The SD Memory Card is full and no more images can be saved. Insert a new SD Memory Card or delete unwanted images. (p.44, p.75)  
Data may be saved when you perform the following operations.  
• Change the file format to JPEG. (p.177)  
• Change the JPEG Recorded Pixels or JPEG Quality setting. (p.174, p.175) |
<p>| No image                  | There are no images that can be played back on the SD Memory Card.                                                                                                                                       |
| This image cannot be displayed | You are trying to play back an image in a format not supported by this camera. You may be able to play it back on another brand of camera or your computer.                                                 |
| No card in the camera     | The SD Memory Card is not inserted in the camera. (p.44)                                                                                                                                                 |
| Memory card error         | The SD Memory Card has a problem, and image capture and playback are impossible. It may be viewable on a computer but not with this camera.                                                             |
| Card is not formatted     | The SD Memory Card you have inserted is unformatted or has been formatted on another device and is not compatible with this camera. Use the card after formatting it with this camera. (p.242) |
| Card is locked            | The write-protect switch on the SD Memory Card you have inserted is locked. Unlock the SD Memory Card. (p.45)                                                                                             |
| The card is electronically locked | Data is protected by the SD Memory Card security feature.                                                                                                                                               |
| This image cannot be enlarged | You are trying to enlarge an image that cannot be enlarged.                                                                                                                                       |
| This image is protected   | You are trying to delete an image that is protected. Remove protection from the image. (p.219)                                                                                                          |
| Battery depleted          | The batteries are exhausted. Install new batteries in the camera. (p.39)                                                                                                                                |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Error Message</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Not enough battery power remaining to clean sensor</td>
<td>Appears during sensor cleaning if the battery level is insufficient. Replace the batteries with new ones or use the AC adaptor kit K-AC84 (optional). (p.42)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Not enough battery power remaining to activate Pixel Mapping</td>
<td>Appears during Pixel Mapping if the battery level is insufficient. Replace the batteries with new ones or use the AC adaptor kit K-AC84 (optional). (p.42)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Image folder cannot be created</td>
<td>The maximum folder number (999) and file number (9999) are being used, and no more images can be saved. Insert a new SD Memory Card or format the card. (p.242)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unable to store image</td>
<td>The image could not be saved because of an SD Memory Card error.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Settings not stored</td>
<td>The DPOF settings could not be saved because SD Memory Card is full. Delete unwanted images and perform DPOF settings again. (p.75)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The operation could not be completed correctly</td>
<td>The camera was unable to measure the manual white balance or detect dust on the sensor. Try the operation again. (p.184, p.286)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No more images can be selected</td>
<td>You cannot select 100 or more images at a time for Index (p.207) and Select &amp; Delete (p.215).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>This RAW file cannot be developed</td>
<td>RAW files captured with other cameras cannot be edited on this camera.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>This image cannot be processed</td>
<td>Appears when Resize (p.224), Cropping (p.225), Digital Filter (p.227), or RAW Development (p.233) is started for images captured with other cameras, or when Resize or Cropping is started for minimum size images.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The camera failed to create an image</td>
<td>The creation of an index print image failed. (p.207)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Camera overheated. Disabling Live View temporarily to protect circuitry</td>
<td>Live View cannot be used because the camera’s internal temperature is too high. Press the OK button and try using Live View again when the camera has cooled down.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>This function is not available in the current mode</td>
<td>You are trying to set a function that is not available in Picture mode, SCN (Scene) mode or Movie (Movie) mode.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Troubleshooting

In rare cases, the camera may not operate correctly due to static electricity. This can be remedied by taking the batteries out and putting them back in again. When the mirror remains in the up position, take the batteries out and put them back in again. Then, turn the power on. The mirror will retract. After these procedures are done, if the camera operates correctly, it does not require any repairs.

We recommend checking the following items before contacting a service center.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Problem</th>
<th>Cause</th>
<th>Remedy</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The camera does not turn on</td>
<td>Batteries are not installed</td>
<td>Check if batteries are installed. If not, install charged batteries.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Batteries are not installed properly</td>
<td>Check the orientation of batteries. Re-insert batteries according to the +/− symbols. (p.39)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The battery power is low</td>
<td>Replace with charged batteries or use the AC adapter kit K-AC84 (optional). (p.42)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The shutter cannot be released</td>
<td>The lens aperture ring is set to other than the A position</td>
<td>Set the lens aperture ring to the A position (p.94) or select [Permitted] in [22. Using Aperture Ring] of the [C Custom Setting 4] menu. (p.284)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The built-in flash is charging</td>
<td>Wait until charging is finished.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>There is no available space on the SD Memory Card</td>
<td>Insert an SD Memory Card with available space or delete unwanted images. (p.44, p.75)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Recording</td>
<td>Wait until recording is finished.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Autofocus does not work</td>
<td>The subject is difficult to focus on</td>
<td>Autofocus cannot focus well on subjects that have low contrast (the sky, white walls, etc.), dark colors, intricate designs, rapidly-moving objects or scenery shot through a window or a net-like pattern. Lock focus on another object located at the same distance as your subject, then aim at the target and press the shutter release button fully. Alternatively, use manual focus. (p.121)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Problem</td>
<td>Cause</td>
<td>Remedy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Autofocus does not work</td>
<td>The subject is not in the focusing area</td>
<td>Position the subject in the focus frame in the middle of the viewfinder. If the subject is outside the focusing area, aim the camera at the subject and lock the focus, then compose a picture and press the shutter release button fully. (p.119)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The subject is too close</td>
<td>Move away from the subject and take a picture.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The focus mode is set to MF</td>
<td>Set the focus mode lever to AF. (p.112)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The focus cannot be locked</td>
<td>[AF Mode] is set to AF.C</td>
<td>Autofocus is not locked (focus lock) when [AF Mode] is set to AF.C (including when the AF.C setting is automatically selected in AF.A). The camera will continue focusing on the subject while the shutter release button is pressed halfway. If there is a subject that you want to focus on, set [AF Mode] to AF.S (Single mode) and use the focus lock. (p.115)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The Capture mode is set to ( \text{\textcte{a}} ) in Picture mode, or ( \text{\textcte{f}}, \text{\textcte{h}}, \text{\textcte{b}}, \text{\textcte{k}}, \text{\textcte{n}}, \text{\textcte{u}}, \text{\textcte{y}}, \text{\textcte{e}} ) or ( \text{\textcte{g}} ) in SCN mode.</td>
<td>Set Capture mode to any setting other than ( \text{\textcte{a}} ) (Moving Object) in Picture mode, or ( \text{\textcte{f}}, \text{\textcte{h}}, \text{\textcte{b}}, \text{\textcte{k}}, \text{\textcte{n}}, \text{\textcte{u}}, \text{\textcte{y}}, \text{\textcte{e}} ) (Stage Lighting), ( \text{\textcte{c}} ) (Kids), ( \text{\textcte{i}} ) (Pet) or ( \text{\textcte{l}} ) (Night Snap) in SCN (Scene) mode. (p.83)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The AE lock function does not operate</td>
<td>The shutter speed is set to Bulb</td>
<td>Set the shutter speed to any mode other than Bulb. (p.100)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The built-in flash does not discharge</td>
<td>When the flash mode is set to ( \text{\textcte{a}} ) or ( \text{\textcte{g}} ), the flash will not discharge if the subject is bright</td>
<td>Set the flash mode to ( \text{\textcte{a}} ) (Manual Flash Discharge) or ( \text{\textcte{g}} ) (Manual Flash+Red-eye Reduct.). (p.67)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The mode dial is set to ( \text{\textcte{d}} )</td>
<td>Set mode dial to any setting other than ( \text{\textcte{d}} ) (Flash Off). (p.83)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SCN mode is set to ( \text{\textcte{a}}, \text{\textcte{f}}, \text{\textcte{h}}, \text{\textcte{b}}, \text{\textcte{k}}, \text{\textcte{n}}, \text{\textcte{u}}, \text{\textcte{y}}, \text{\textcte{i}}, \text{\textcte{c}}, \text{\textcte{l}} ) or ( \text{\textcte{g}} )</td>
<td>Set SCN (Scene) mode to any setting other than ( \text{\textcte{a}} ) (Night Scene), ( \text{\textcte{h}} ) (Sunset), ( \text{\textcte{b}} ) (Stage Lighting), ( \text{\textcte{c}} ) (Candlelight) or ( \text{\textcte{i}} ) (Museum). (p.85)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The power zoom system does not work</td>
<td>The camera does not have the power zoom function</td>
<td>Use manual zoom. (p.66)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Problem</td>
<td>Cause</td>
<td>Remedy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The USB connection with a computer does not work properly</td>
<td>The USB connection mode is set to [PTP]</td>
<td>Set [USB Connection] in the [Set-up 2] menu to [MSC]. (p.265)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shake Reduction does not work</td>
<td>The Shake Reduction function is off</td>
<td>Set [Shake Reduction] to on. (p.129)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The Shake Reduction function is not set properly</td>
<td>If a lens for which the focal length information cannot be obtained is used, set the focal length in the [Input Focal Length] screen. (p.130)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Shutter speed is too low for the Shake Reduction function to be effective when panning or shooting night scenes, etc.</td>
<td>Set [Shake Reduction] to off and use a tripod.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The subject is too close</td>
<td>Move away from the subject, or turn off the Shake Reduction function and use a tripod.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Main Specifications

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>TTL autofocus, auto-exposure SLR digital-still camera with built-in retractable P-TTL flash</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Effective Pixels</td>
<td>Approx. 12.4 megapixels</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sensor</td>
<td>Total pixels approx. 12.9 megapixels, CMOS with a primary color filter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recorded Pixels</td>
<td>Still picture: 12M (RAW/JPEG: 4288×2848 pixels), 10M (3936×2624 pixels), 6M (3072×2048 pixels), 2M (1728×1152 pixels) Movie: 9M (1280×720 pixels), 3N (640×416 pixels)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sensitivity (Standard output sensitivity)</td>
<td>Auto, Manual (ISO 200 to 6400 (EV steps can be set to 1 EV, 1/3 EV or 1/2 EV))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>File Format</td>
<td>RAW (PEF/DNG), JPEG (Exif 2.21), DCF 2.0 compliant, DPOF compatible, Print Image Matching III compatible, RAW+JPEG simultaneous capturing compatible, For movies: AVI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JPEG Quality</td>
<td>★★★ (Best), ★★ (Better), and ★ (Good)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Storage Medium</td>
<td>SD Memory Card, SDHC Memory Card</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Approximate Number of Shots

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recorded Pixels</th>
<th>File Format/ JPEG Quality</th>
<th>SD Memory Card Capacity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4 GB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12M 4288×2848</td>
<td>RAW (PEF)</td>
<td>194</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>RAW (DNG)</td>
<td>192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>★★★</td>
<td>553</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>★★</td>
<td>973</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>★</td>
<td>1915</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10M 3936×2624</td>
<td>★★★</td>
<td>652</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>★★</td>
<td>1149</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>★</td>
<td>2234</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6M 3072×2048</td>
<td>★★★</td>
<td>1068</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>★★</td>
<td>1856</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>★</td>
<td>3549</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2M 1728×1152</td>
<td>★★★</td>
<td>3176</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>★★</td>
<td>5485</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>★</td>
<td>10057</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

JPEG Quality (Compression): ★★★ (Best) = 1/4.5, ★★ (Better) = 1/8, ★ (Good) = 1/16

* The number of storable images may vary depending on the subject, shooting conditions, shooting mode and SD Memory Card, etc.
Approximate Movie Recording Time

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recorded Pixels</th>
<th>Quality</th>
<th>SD Memory Card Capacity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4 GB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1280×720</td>
<td>★★★</td>
<td>11 min. 45 sec.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>★★</td>
<td>16 min. 29 sec.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>★</td>
<td>23 min. 07 sec.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>640×416</td>
<td>★★★</td>
<td>39 min. 26 sec.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>★★</td>
<td>54 min. 21 sec.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>★</td>
<td>1 hr. 14 min. 29 sec.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Movie recording time is based on our standard measuring conditions. The above figures may vary depending on the subject, shooting conditions and SD Memory Card, etc.

White Balance
- Auto, Daylight, Shade, Cloudy, Fluorescent Light (D: Daylight Color, N: Daylight White, W: Cool White, L: Warm White), Tungsten Light, Flash, CTE, Manual, fine tuning available

Monitor
- 2.7 inch wide viewing field TFT color LCD with approx. 230,000 dots, brightness and color adjustment functions

Playback Function
- Single frame, Multi-image display, zoom display (up to 16 times, scrolling possible), image comparison, rotating, calendar display, folder display, slideshow, histogram, bright/dark area, resize, cropping, index (Thumbnails/Square/Random 1/Random 2/Random 3/Bubble)

Exposure Mode
- Program (P), Sensitivity priority (Sv), Shutter priority (Tv), Aperture priority (Av), Manual (M), Movie (C)
- Picture mode: Auto Picture (Auto PICT), Portrait, Landscape, Macro, Moving Object, Night Scene, Portrait, Flash Off (When shooting with Live View, Blue Sky) and Sunset (Sunset) can also be selected.
- Scene mode: Night Scene, Surf & Snow, Food, Sunset, Stage Lighting, Kids, Pet, Candlelight, Museum, Night Snap

Shutter
- Electromechanically controlled vertical-run focal-plane shutter, Speed range (1) Auto 1/6000 to 30 sec. (stepless), (2) Manual 1/6000 to 30 sec. (Selectable between 1/3 EV and 1/2 EV for EV steps), Bulb, Electromagnetic release, Shutter lock by setting the main switch to OFF position
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Lens Mount</strong></td>
<td>PENTAX KAF2 bayonet mount (AF coupler, lens information contacts, K-mount with power contacts)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Lens Used</strong></td>
<td>PENTAX KAF3 mount lenses, KAF2 mount lenses (power zoom not available), KAF mount lenses, KA mount lenses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Autofocus System</strong></td>
<td>TTL phase-matching autofocus system, SAFOX VIII (11-point AF), AF operational brightness range: EV –1 to 18 (at ISO 100 with f/1.4 lens), Focus lock available, Focus Mode: <strong>AF.A</strong> (Auto)/ <strong>AF.S</strong> (Single)/ <strong>AF.C</strong> (Continuous)/ <strong>MF</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Viewfinder</strong></td>
<td>Penta-mirror viewfinder, Natural-Bright-Matte II focusing screen, Field of view: approx. 96%, Magnification: approx. 0.85× (with 50 mm f/1.4 lens at ∞), Diopter: approx. –2.5 to +1.5m⁻¹ (per meter)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Viewfinder Indicator</strong></td>
<td>Focus information: ◇ is displayed when in-focus and blinking when unable to focus, ◆ is lit = Built-in flash ready, ◆ is blinking = Flash should be used, Shutter speed, Sensitivity, Aperture value, e-dial enabled indicator, ✩ = AE lock, Capacity remaining, ✽ = EV Compensation, <strong>MF</strong> = Manual focus, Picture mode icon, Shake Reduction display</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Preview Function</strong></td>
<td>Live View: TTL method using the image sensor, Zoom Display and Show Grid are available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Optical Preview: Depth of field confirmation (electronically controlled and available in all exposure modes)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Digital Preview: Composition, exposure, focus and white balance confirmation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Continuous Shooting (Hi/Lo)</strong></td>
<td>Approx. 4.7 fps (JPEG (12M, ★★★, Hi): up to 17 frames, RAW: up to 5 frames)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Approx. 2 fps (JPEG (12M, ★★★, Lo): until SD Memory Card is full, RAW: up to 11 frames)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Self-timer</strong></td>
<td>Electronically controlled with delay time of 12 sec./2 sec. (with the mirror lock-up function). Start by pressing the shutter release button. Operation confirmation: Possible to set beep. Can be cancelled after activation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Remote Control</strong></td>
<td>PENTAX Remote Control F (optional) Release shutter immediately or three seconds after pressing the remote control shutter release button</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Mirror</strong></td>
<td>Quick-return mirror, mirror lock-up function (2 sec. self-timer)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Digital Filter</strong></td>
<td>Toy Camera, Retro, High Contrast, Extract Color, Soft, Star Burst, Fish-eye, Monochrome, Color, Water Color, Pastel, Slim, Miniature, HDR, Base Parameter Adj, Custom Filter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Custom Image</strong></td>
<td>Image Tone (7 types), Saturation, Hue, Contrast, Sharpness/Fine Sharpness, High/Low Key Adj, Filter Effect, Toning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Exposure Bracketing</strong></td>
<td>Three frames (underexposed, standard (proper exposure) and overexposed) are shot continuously with exposure bracketing. (Selectable between 1/3 EV and 1/2 EV for EV steps)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Multi-exposure</strong></td>
<td>Select the number of shots between 2 and 9 (Auto EV Adjustment can be set according to the number of shots)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Exposure Meter/Exposure Range</strong></td>
<td>TTL multi (16-segment metering), Exposure range from EV 1 to EV 21.5 at ISO 200, with 50 mm f/1.4 lens, Center-weighted or Spot metering method can be set</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>EV Compensation</strong></td>
<td>±3 EV (1/3 EV, 1/2 EV Steps), EV Steps can be selected</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>AE Lock</strong></td>
<td>Can be assigned to the <strong>AF/AE-L</strong> button using the custom function setting (timer type: two times the meter operating time set in the custom function setting) Continuous as long as the shutter release button is halfway pressed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Built-in Flash</strong></td>
<td>P-TTL built-in flash with serial control, GN approx. 16 (ISO 200), Angles of coverage: 28 mm lens angle of view (35 mm equivalent), Flash synchronization speed range at 1/180 sec. and slower, Daylight-sync flash, Slow-speed Sync flash, Auto-popup function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>External Flash Sync</strong></td>
<td>Hot shoe with <strong>X</strong>-contact, which couples with PENTAX dedicated auto flashes, ISO range = P-TTL: 100 to 1600, Automatic flash, Red-eye reduction flash function, High-speed-sync and wireless-sync with PENTAX dedicated flash</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Custom Function</strong></td>
<td>22 functions can be set</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Time Function</strong></td>
<td>World Time settings for 75 cities (28 time zones)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Shake Reduction Function</strong></td>
<td>CMOS Image Sensor Shift, effective compensation range = up to 4 EV (dependent on the used lens type and shooting conditions)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dust Removal</strong></td>
<td>SP coating and CMOS sensor operations for dust removal. Can be set to operate when the camera is turned on.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Power</strong></td>
<td>Four AA lithium, AA Ni-MH rechargeable, or AA alkaline batteries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Battery Exhaustion</strong></td>
<td>Battery exhaustion symbol is lit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>In/Out Port</strong></td>
<td>PC/AV terminal (USB 2.0 (high speed compatible))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Video Output Format</strong></td>
<td>NTSC/PAL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dimensions and Weight</strong></td>
<td>Approx. 122.5 mm (W) × 91.5 mm (H) × 67.5 mm (D) (excluding protrusions), approx. 515 g (body only), approx. 580 g (including four AA lithium batteries and an SD Memory Card), approx. 615 g (including four AA alkaline batteries and an SD Memory Card)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Languages</strong></td>
<td>English, French, German, Spanish, Portuguese, Italian, Dutch, Danish, Swedish, Finnish, Polish, Czech, Hungarian, Turkish, Greek, Russian, Korean, Chinese (Traditional/Simplified) and Japanese</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Glossary

AdobeRGB
Color space recommended by Adobe Systems, Inc. for commercial printing. Wider range of color reproduction than sRGB. Covers most of the color range so colors available only when printed are not lost when editing images on a computer. When image is opened by non-compatible software, the colors look lighter.

AE Metering
Brightness of subject is measured to determine exposure. In this camera, select from [Multi-segment Metering], [Center-weighted Metering] and [Spot Metering].

AF point
Position in the viewfinder that determines focus. In this camera, select from [Auto], [Select] and [Spot].

Aperture
The aperture increases or reduces the light beam (thickness) passing through the lens to the CMOS sensor.

Bright Portion
Overexposed area in the image loses contrast and appears white.

Camera Shake (Blur)
When the camera moves while the shutter is open, the entire image appears blurred. This occurs more often when shutter speed is low. Prevent camera shake by raising the sensitivity, using the flash, and raising the shutter speed. Alternatively, use a tripod to stabilize the camera. As camera shake is most likely to occur when pressing the shutter release button, use the Shake Reduction function, the self-timer or the remote control unit to prevent camera movement.

CMOS sensor
Photography element which converts the light entering through the lens into electric signals that create the image.
Color Space
A defined range of colors from the spectrum which are used. In digital cameras, [sRGB] is defined as the standard by Exif. In this camera, [AdobeRGB] is also used because of the richer color expression over sRGB.

Color Temperature
This numerically expresses the color of the light source illuminating the subject. This is indicated in absolute temperature, using Kelvin (K) units. The color of light shifts to a bluish color as the color temperature rises, and to a reddish color as the color temperature falls.

Dark Portion
Underexposed area in the image loses contrast and appears black.

DCF (Design rule for Camera File system)
A digital camera file system standard established by the Japan Electronics and Information Technology Industries Association (JEITA).

Depth of field
Area of focus. This depends on the aperture value, lens focal length, and distance to the subject. For example, select a smaller aperture value (higher number) to increase the depth of field or use a larger aperture value (smaller number) to decrease the depth of field.

DNG RAW file
DNG (Digital Negative) is a general-purpose RAW file format designed by Adobe Systems. When images captured in proprietary RAW formats are converted to DNG format, support and compatibility for the images increases significantly.

DPOF (Digital Print Order Format)
Rules for writing information onto a card with recorded images regarding the specific images and number of copies to be printed. Prints can easily be made by taking the images to a DPOF photo printing store.
Dynamic Range (D-Range)
Indicated with a value expressing the light level reproducible in an image. This is the same as the term “Exposure latitude” used with silver halide film.
Generally, when the dynamic range is wide, overexposed and/or underexposed areas are less likely to occur within the image, and when the dynamic range is narrow, all image tones can be reproduced sharply and accurately.

EV (Exposure Value)
Exposure value is determined by the combination of the aperture value and the shutter speed.

EV Compensation
Process of adjusting the image brightness by changing the shutter speed and/or aperture value.

Exif (Exchangeable image file format for digital still camera)
A standard digital camera file format established by the Japan Electronics and Information Technology Industries Association (JEITA).

Exposure Bracketing
For automatically changing exposure. When the shutter release button is pressed, three images are captured. The first one has no compensation, the second is underexposed and the third is over-exposed.

Histogram
A graph that shows the darkest and brightest points in an image. The horizontal axis represents the brightness and the vertical axis represents the number of pixels. This is useful when you wish to refer to the exposure status of an image.

ISO Sensitivity
The level of sensitivity to light. With a high sensitivity, images can be shot with a high shutter speed even in dark places, reducing camera shake. However, images taken with a high sensitivity are more susceptible to noise.
JPEG
An image compression method. In this camera, select from ★★★ (Best), ★★ (Better), or ★ (Good). Images recorded in JPEG format are suited for viewing on your computer or for attaching to e-mail.

ND (Neutral Density) Filter
A filter available in different saturation levels that adjusts the brightness without affecting the color tone of pictures.

Noise Reduction
Process to reduce noise (image roughness or unevenness) caused by slow shutter speed or high sensitivity shooting.

NTSC/PAL
These are video output formats. NTSC is mainly used in Japan, North America, and South Korea. PAL is mainly used in Europe and in China.

Quality Level
This refers to the image compression ratio. The lower the compression, the more detailed the image. The image becomes rougher as the compression rate rises.

RAW data
Unedited image data output from the CMOS sensor. RAW data are data before being internally processed by the camera. Camera settings at the time of capture, such as White Balance, Contrast, Saturation, and Sharpness can be set for each frame after shooting. In addition, RAW data are 12 bit data that contain 16 times the information of 8 bit JPEG data. Rich gradations are possible. Transfer RAW data to your computer and use the provided software to create image data with different settings, such as JPEG.

Recorded Pixels
Indicates the size of the image by the number of pixels. The more pixels that compose a picture, the larger the image size.

Shutter Speed
The length of time that the shutter is open and light strikes the CMOS sensor. The amount of light that strikes the CMOS sensor can be changed by altering the shutter speed.
sRGB (standard RGB)
International standard of color space established by the IEC (International Electrotechnical Commission). This is defined from color space for computer monitors and is also used as the standard color space for Exif.

Vignetting
The picture edges are blackened when part of the light coming from the subject is blocked by the hood or filter ring, or when the flash is partially blocked by the lens.

White Balance
While shooting, color temperature is adjusted to match the light source so that the subject appears to have correct color.
Symbols

[Rec. Mode] Menu ... 79, 276
[Playback] Menu ... 201, 278
[Set-up] Menu ... 240, 279
[Custom Setting] Menu ........................................................................ 81, 280

(Playback) button ........................................................................ 19, 21, 74

(Green) button .... 19, 21, 179

EV Compensation button ................................................................. 19, 107

(Flash pop-up/Delete) button .............................................................. 19, 21, 67, 75

Auto Picture ................. 84

Portrait ......................... 84

Landscape ..................... 84

Macro ......................... 84

Moving Object ................ 84

Night Scene Portrait ..... 84

Blue Sky ....................... 84

Flash Off ....................... 84

Night Scene .................. 85

Surf & Snow .................. 85

Food ........................... 85

Sunset .......................... 85

Stage Lighting ................. 85

Kids ........................... 85

Pet .............................. 85

Candlelight ................... 85

Museum ....................... 85

Night Snap .................... 85

Movie .......................... 150

AC adapter ..................... 42

Accessories .................. 289

Action in M Mode .......... 102

Adding the date .............. 256

AdobeRGB ...................... 187, 302

AE Lock ....................... 102, 108, 120

AE Metering .................. 104, 302

AF (Autofocus) .............. 112

AF/AE-L button .............. 19, 114

AF Mode ..................... 115

AF point ..................... 117, 302

AF160FC ...................... 162, 290

AF200FG ...................... 162, 290

AF360FGZ .................... 162, 289

AF540FGZ .................... 162, 289

Alkaline batteries .......... 39

Aperture ..................... 88, 302

Aperture Priority Mode Av .. 98

Aperture ring ................ 94, 284

Auto Flash Discharge ...... 69

Auto Picture ................. 61, 84

Auto Power Off ............. 253

AWB (White Balance) .... 182

Autofocus AF ................. 112

Autofocus Mode ............ 144

Av (Aperture Priority) Mode .. 98

AV cable ..................... 221

AV device .................... 221

B

Base Parameter Adj (Digital Filter) ............................................. 227

Batteries ....................... 39, 253

Beep ........................... 243

Blue Sky ...................... 84

Bright areas ................. 29, 189, 302

Brightness Adjustment .... 189

Brightness Level ........... 250

Brightness of the monitor .. 250

Built-in Flash ................ 67
Bulb Shooting .......................... 103

C
Calendar display ........................ 206
Camera shake .......................... 128, 302
Candlelight ..................... 85
Capture Mode ...................... 83
Card access lamp .................... 17
Catch-in Focus .................... 123
Center-weighted .................. 106
City names .......................... 246
Cloudy (White Balance) .......... 182
CMOS sensor ...................... 302
CMOS sensor cleaning ............ 285
Color (Digital Filter) ............ 227
Color of the monitor ............ 251
Color Space ...................... 187, 303
Color Temperature ............ 184, 303
Continuous Autofocus .......... 120
Continuous mode
AF.C .................................. 112, 115
Continuous Shooting .......... 136
Contrast (Custom Image) ...... 194
Contrast AF .................... 145
Contrast-Control-Sync (Flash)
 ........................................ 171
Control panel .................. 24, 33
Copyright Holder .............. 257
Correct exposure .............. 88
Cropping ......................... 225
Cross Processing .............. 196
CTE (White Balance) ........ 182
Custom Filter (Digital Filters)
 ........................................ 140, 228
Custom Image .................. 194
[Custom Setting] Menu
 ........................................ 81, 280

D
Dark areas .................. 29, 190, 303
Date Adjustment .............. 56
Date change ....................... 244
Daylight (White Balance) .... 182
Daylight-Sync Shooting ....... 72
DCF ........................................ 303
Default Settings ............... 276
Delete ............................. 75, 215
Delete All Images ............. 218
Delete Folder .................... 216
Deleting a Single Image ....... 75
Depth of field ................. 89, 303
Destination ....................... 244
Digital Filter .................... 140, 227
Digital Preview ................. 124, 127
Diopter Adjust .................. 50
Direct keys .................. 32, 78, 276
Display Color .................... 248
Display Language ............. 52, 247
Distortion ....................... 192
DNG .......................... 178, 303
DPOF .......................... 255, 303
D-Range ....................... 189, 304
Drive Mode ....................... 189, 304
Dust Alert ....................... 286
Dust Removal ................... 285
Dynamic Range ............. 91, 189, 304

E
e-dial ......................... 19, 21
e-dial in Program ............... 95
Error Message .................. 293
EV ....................................... 304
EV Compensation ............. 107, 304
Av (EV Compensation)
button ......................... 19, 107
EV Steps ......................... 108
Exif ......................... 257, 304
Exposure ......................... 88
Exposure Bracketing ........... 109, 304
Exposure metering timer .... 106
Exposure mode ................ 93
Exposure Warning .......... 98, 99, 101
External flash ....................... 162
Extract Color (Digital Filter) ................................. 140, 227
Eyecup .................................................. 50

F
Face Detection AF ............... 145
File Format ................... 178, 268
File number .................... 252
Filter ............................... 140, 227
Filter Effect (Custom Image) ........................................ 194
Fish-eye (Digital Filter) ............................................... 140, 228
Flash ........................................ 67, 155
Flash (White Balance) ......... 182
Flash Exposure Compensation ............................................ 72
Flash Off ................................. 84
Flash pop-up/Delete) button ........................................ 19, 21, 67, 75
Fluorescent Light (White Balance) .................................... 182
Focal Length ......................... 130
Focus Indicator .................. 62, 121
Focus Lock ........................................ 119
Focus Mode .......................... 112
Focus mode lever .......... 19, 112
Focus point .................. 117, 302
Focusing ........................................ 112
Focusing Area ...................... 117
Folder display ...................... 205
Folder Name ....................... 252
Food ........................................ 85
Format ....................................... 242
Four-way controller (▲▼◄►) ................................... 19, 21

G
Green button ............ 19, 21, 179
Guide Display ................. 22, 248

Guide Indicator ..................... 30

H
HDR (Digital Filter) ............... 228
HDR Capture ..................... 191
Help ........................................ 272
High Contrast (Digital Filter) ........................................ 140, 227
High Dynamic Range .......... 191
High/low Key Adjustment ........ (Custom Image) ...................... 194
High-ISO NR .......................... 92
Highlight Correction .......... 189
High-Speed Flash Sync Mode ....................................... 164
Histogram .......................... 28, 304
Hometown ......................... 244
Hue (Custom Image) ............ 194

I
Image Comparison ............... 214
Image Tone ...................... 194
Index ...................................... 207
INFO button .................. 19, 21, 25
Initial Settings ..................... 52
Initializing ................................... 242
Input Focal Length .......... 130
Installing software ................. 268
Instant Review .................. 63, 249
ISO Sensitivity .................... 90, 304

J
JPEG ....................................... 177, 305
JPEG Quality .................. 46, 175
JPEG Recorded Pixels .... 46, 174

K
Kelvin ......................... 184, 303
Kids .......................... 85
Appendix

L
Landscape .................................. 84
Language Setting .......................... 52, 247
Lateral chromatic aberration
..................................................... 192
LCD Color Tuning .......................... 251
Lens ............................................. 48, 282
Lens Correction .............................. 192
Lens unlock button ....................... 19, 49
Lens with aperture ring
..................................................... 94, 284
Lithium batteries ........................... 39
Live View ...................................... 143
Lock Exposure ................................ 120
Locking the focus .......................... 119
LV button .................................... 146

M
M (Manual) Mode ......................... 100
Macintosh ..................................... 264
Macro ......................................... 84
Main switch ............................... 19, 21, 51
Manual Flash Discharge .............. 70
Manual focus MF ....................... 121
Manual Mode M .......................... 100
Manual White Balance ............... 184
Mass Storage Class ..................... 266
Matte Field .................................. 122
Memory ........................................ 260
MENU button ............................. 19, 21, 35
Menu Operation ........................... 35
Meter Operating Time ............... 106
Metering method ....................... 104
MF (Manual focus) ...................... 121
Miniature (Digital Filter) .......... 227
Mirror Lock-up ......................... 133
Mirror Up .................................... 287
Mode dial ................................... 19, 83
Monitor ....................................... 22

Monochrome (Digital Filter)
..................................................... 227
Movie ........................................ 148, 150
Moving Object ................................ 84
MSC ......................................... 266
Multi-exposure ............................ 138
Multi-image display ................. 204
Multiple Flash Shooting .......... 170
Multi-segment ............................. 105
Museum ................................. 85

N
ND Filter ..................................... 305
Neutral Density Filter .................. 305
Night Scene ............................... 85
Night Scene Portrait ................. 84
Night Snap .................................. 85
Ni-MH rechargeable batteries
..................................................... 39
Noise Reduction ......................... 92, 305
NTSC ........................................ 222, 305

O
OK button .................................. 19, 21, 118
Optical Preview ......................... 124, 126
Optional Accessories .................. 289

P
P (Program) Mode ....................... 94
PAL ........................................ 222, 305
Pastel (Digital Filter) ................. 227
PC/AV terminal ......................... 221
PEF ......................................... 178
PENTAX Digital Camera
Utility 4 .................................. 268
Pet ............................................. 85
Phase Difference AF .................. 145
Photographer Information ........ 257
Picture mode ........................... 84
Picture Transfer Protocol ........ 266
Pixel Mapping ......................... 259
Pixels ................................... 174
Playback ................................ 74
(Playback) button ................................... 19, 21, 74
Playback Display Method ... 203
[Playback] Menu .... 201, 278
Playback Mode Palette ..................................... 200, 278
Playback Time ....................... 41
Playing Back Movies ............ 152
Portrait ............................................. 84
Power ..................................... 51
Power lamp .................... 17, 254
Press fully .............................. 64
Press halfway .................... 64
Preview ..................... 124
Product Registration ............ 273
Program Mode P .................. 94
Protect ................................. 219
Provided Software ............. 268
PTP ..................................... 266
P-TTL (Flash) ....................... 168
P-TTL Auto (Flash) .............. 163

Q
Quality Level ......................... 46, 149, 175, 305
Quick Zoom .............................. 203

R
RAW ...................................... 177, 305
RAW Button Function ........ 180
RAW Development ............. 233
RAW File Format ................ 178
[Rec. Mode] Menu ........ 79, 276
Recorded Pixels .... 46, 174, 305
Red-eye reduction ............ 71, 168
Remaining image storage capacity ......................... 41
Remote Control .................... 134
Reset ................................. 280
Resize ................................... 224
Retro (Digital Filter) ...... 140, 227
Rotate ................................... 213

S
Saturation (Custom Image) ............................................. 194
SCN (Scene) mode ................. 85
SD Memory Card .................. 44
Select & Delete ..................... 215
Select Battery ....................... 253
Self-timer .............................. 131
Sensitivity .............................. 90
Sensitivity Priority Mode Sv .. 96
Sensor Cleaning ................... 287
Setting ................................. 106
[Set-up] Menu ........ 240, 279
Shade (White Balance) ........ 182
Shadow Correction ................. 190
Shake Reduction ............ 128, 149
Sharpness (Custom Image) ............................................. 194
Shooting Information ........... 23
Shutter Priority Mode Tv ... 97
Shutter release button ......................... 19, 21, 64
Shutter Speed .................. 88, 305
Single mode A.F.S .............. 112, 115
Slideshow ............................. 210
Slim (Digital Filter) ............. 228
Slow Shutter Speed NR ........ 92
Slow-speed Sync .................. 156
Soft (Digital Filter) ............. 140, 228
Sound ................................... 149
Spot Metering ..................... 106
sRGB ............................ 187, 306
Stage Lighting .................... 85
Star Burst (Digital Filter) ........ 140, 228
Status display .................... 248
Status screen ..................... 23
Appendix

Strap ...................................... 38
Sunset 🌅 ................................. 85
Surf & Snow 🌊 ........................... 85
Sv (Sensitivity Priority) Mode ........................................ 96

T
Text Size ............................... 248
Toning (Custom Image) ....... 194
Toy Camera (Digital Filter) ........................................ 140, 227
Trailing Curtain Sync  ... 158, 169
Tungsten Light (White Balance) ........................................ 182
TV .................................................. 221
Tv (Shutter Priority) Mode .... 97

U
USB Connection .................. 265
USB Connection mode .... 265

V
Video Output Format .......... 222
Viewfinder ......................... 30, 50
Vignetting .......................... 306

W
Water Color (Digital Filter) ... 227
White Balance .......... 182, 306
Windows ............................. 264
Wireless Flash Control .... 168
Wireless Mode (Flash) .... 165
World Time ........................ 244

Z
Zoom Display ...................... 202
Zoom Lens .......................... 66
All PENTAX cameras purchased through authorized bona fide photographic distribution channels are guaranteed against defects of material or workmanship for a period of twelve months from date of purchase. Service will be rendered, and defective parts will be replaced without cost to you within that period, provided the equipment does not show evidence of impact, sand or liquid damage, mishandling, tampering, battery or chemical corrosion, operation contrary to operating instructions, or modification by an unauthorized repair shop. The manufacturer or its authorized representatives shall not be liable for any repair or alterations except those made with its written consent and shall not be liable for damages from delay or loss of use or from other indirect or consequential damages of any kind, whether caused by defective material or workmanship or otherwise; and it is expressly agreed that the liability of the manufacturer or its representatives under all guarantees or warranties, whether expressed or implied, is strictly limited to the replacement of parts as hereinbefore provided. No refunds will be made on repairs by non-authorized PENTAX service facilities.

Procedure During 12-month Warranty Period
Any PENTAX which proves defective during the 12-month warranty period should be returned to the dealer from whom you purchased the equipment or to the manufacturer. If there are no representatives of the manufacturer in your country, send the equipment to the manufacturer, with postage prepaid. In this case, it will take a considerable length of time before the equipment can be returned to you owing to the complicated customs procedures required. If the equipment is covered by warranty, repairs will be made and parts replaced free of charge, and the equipment will be returned to you upon completion of servicing. If the equipment is not covered by warranty, regular charges of the manufacturer or of its representatives will apply. Shipping charges are to be borne by the owner. If your PENTAX was purchased outside of the country where you wish to have it serviced during the warranty period, regular handling and servicing fees may be charged by the manufacturer’s representatives in that country. Notwithstanding this, your PENTAX returned to the manufacturer will be serviced free of charge according to this procedure and warranty policy. In any case, however, shipping charges and customs clearance fees to be borne by the sender. To prove the date of your purchase when
required, please keep the receipt or bills covering the purchase of your
equipment for at least a year. Before sending your equipment for servicing,
please make sure that you are sending it to the manufacturer’s authorized
representatives or their approved repair shops, unless you are sending it
directly to the manufacturer. Always obtain a quotation for the service
charge, and only after you accept the quoted service charge, instruct the
service station to proceed with the servicing.

- **This warranty policy does not affect the customer’s statutory
  rights.**
- **The local warranty policies available from PENTAX distributors in
  some countries can supersede this warranty policy. Therefore, we
  recommend that you review the warranty card supplied with your
  product at the time of purchase, or contact the PENTAX distributor
  in your country for more information and to receive a copy of the
  warranty policy.**

The CE Mark is a Directive conformity mark of the European Union.
For customers in USA

STATEMENT OF FCC COMPLIANCE

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Changes or modifications not approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user’s authority to operate the equipment.

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation.

If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

• Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
• Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
• Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.

* Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

For customers in Canada

This Class B digital apparatus complies with Canadian ICES-003.

Pour les utilisateurs au Canada

Cet appareil numérique de la classe B est conforme à la norme NMB-003 du Canada.

FOR CALIFORNIA, U.S.A. ONLY

Perchlorate Material-special handling may apply.

The lithium battery used in this camera contains perchlorate material, which may require special handling.

See www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate
Declaration of Conformity

According to 47CFR, Parts 2 and 15 for Class B Personal Computers and Peripherals

We: PENTAX Imaging Company
A Division of PENTAX of America, Inc.

Located at: 600 12th Street, Suite 300
Golden, Colorado 80401 U.S.A.
Phone: 303-799-8000 FAX: 303-790-1131

Declare under sole responsibility that the product identified herein complies with 47CFR Parts 2 and 15 of the FCC rules as a Class B digital device. Each product marketed is identical to the representative unit tested and found to be compliant with the standards. Records maintained continue to reflect the equipment being produced can be expected to be within the variation accepted, due to quantity production and testing on the statistical basis as required by 47CFR §2.909. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation. The above named party is responsible for ensuring that the equipment complies with the standards of 47CFR §15.101 to §15.109.

Product Name: PENTAX Digital Still Camera
Model Number: K-x
Contact person: Customer Service Manager
Date and Place: September, 2009, Colorado
Information for Users on Collection and Disposal of Old Equipment and Used Batteries

1. In the European Union

These symbols on the products, packaging and/or accompanying documents mean that used electrical and electronic equipments and batteries should not be mixed with general household waste.

Used electrical/electronic equipments and batteries must be treated separately and in accordance with legislation that requires proper treatment, recovery and recycling of these products.

Following the implementation by member states, private households within the EU states may return their used electrical/electronic equipments and batteries to designated collection facilities free of charge*.

In some countries your local retailer may also take back your old product free of charge if you purchase a similar new one.

*Please contact your local authority for further details.

By disposing of this product correctly you will help ensure that the waste undergoes the necessary treatment, recovery and recycling and thus prevent potential negative effects on the environment and human health which could otherwise arise due to inappropriate waste handling.

2. In other countries outside the EU

These symbols are only valid in the European Union. If you wish to discard these items, please contact your local authorities or dealer and ask for the correct method of disposal.

For Switzerland: Used electrical/electronic equipment can be returned free of charge to the dealer, even when you don’t purchase a new product. Further collection facilities are listed on the home page of www.swico.ch or www.sens.ch.

Note for the battery symbol (bottom two symbol examples):
This symbol might be used in combination with a designation for the chemical element or compound in use. In this case you have to comply with the requirement set by the Directive for the chemicals involved.
SLR Digital Camera

Operating Manual

For optimum camera performance, please read the Operating Manual before using the camera.

• Specifications and external dimensions are subject to change without notice.